Curcumin Containing Chitosan-Pectinate Nanoparticulate Drug Delivery System for Colon Cancer Treatment

Enas Ali Alkhader, BSc Pharmacy, MSc Pharmaceutical Sciences

Thesis submitted to the University of Nottingham in fulfilment of the requirements for the Degree of Doctor of Philosophy

April 2018
To the most precious diamonds in my life, my father and my daughter Mariah, to you I dedicate this work.
This thesis is the result of the author’s original work except for quotations and citations, which have been duly acknowledged. It has not been previously or concurrently submitted for any degree at the University of Nottingham Malaysia Campus or any other institution.

Enas Ali Alkhader

Date: 18/4/2018
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

First and foremost, I dedicate my work to Allah, the Almighty, for he empowered me the strength to persist all the way long, and granted me the blessing to finish this thesis the way it is.

My immense debt of gratitude goes to my supervisor Prof. Nashiru Billa, for his exceptional supervision, knowledge, expertise, patience, and guidance from the day this project idea was born, to the final draft of this thesis.

I would also like to thank my co-supervisor Prof. Clive Roberts (Head, School of Pharmacy, UNUK) for his assistance and advice that have contributed to the completion of this project.

I would like to express my gratitude to Prof. Andrew Morris (Dean, School of Pharmacy, UNMC) for his precious advices and for his role as my internal assessor, your advices during the viva were well taken.

A very special gratitude goes to Prof. Rozita Rosli (University Putra Malaysia, UPM) for allowing me to use MAKNA-UPM cancer research laboratories for all the cell studies conducted in this project. I would like to express my gratitude to Madam Tommini Saleh for her exceptional guidance and teaching through the whole duration of my work in MAKNA labs. Her expertise has immensely helped in the completion of my work.

My sincere gratitude goes to Prof. Kah-Hay Yuen (University of Sains Malaysia, USM) for allowing me to use his laboratories for the animal studies conducted in this project. Heartfelt thanks goes to Mr. Eng Kwong Seow, Ms. Zhuan Lee, and Dr. Sherlyn Chin for their outstanding assistance during my work at USM.
I would like to express my heartfelt gratitude to the Graduate School of UNMC for the training programs organized at all stages of the PhD journey, with a special mention to Dr. Jiin Woei Lee, Dr. Tissa Chandesa, and Dr. Maysoun Mustafa for the valuable information, advice, and the enthusiasm they shared during the training workshops.

I would like to thank all the lab technicians, the academic, and administrative staff of the School of Pharmacy, UNMC for their support in numerous ways, you all have contributed, in a way or another, in the completion of this project.

I would like to express my sincere gratitude to my colleague at the Drug Delivery Lab (UNMC), Rayan Sabra, you have been much more than a lab colleague, you have been a dear friend who immensely eased my PhD journey. Your spiritual, technical, and practical support have immensely helped in the completion of this project. Special thanks goes to my colleagues Nur Aliana Hidayah Binti Mohamed, you have been a genuinely caring friend, Lee Shi Ting, Janet Tan Sui Ling, Rajesh Sreedharan Nair, and Wai Jing Luen, as well as former colleagues Dr. Yamina Boukari, Dr. Hilda Amekyeh, and Nabil Ahmad Siddiqui for all of the support, help, and encouragement they provided in my journey.

To my role model, my dearest father, no words could ever express my gratitude, you have supported this journey from the very first day by all it means. Your encouragement, support, and inspiration throughout my whole life have guided me towards this. I would have never achieved any of this without you. My eternal cheerleader, my beloved mother, your encouragement, support, and full heart prayers have guided me along the way. Your excitement whenever I achieved a significant milestone in my journey was my dose of encouragement to move forward. To my loving journey partner, my husband Emad, thank you for sharing
and easing this journey, thank you for being by my side in my moments of crisis. My wholehearted thanks goes to my siblings for believing in me and for their continuous encouragement and support, who asked for nothing but my happiness and success. Lastly, I would like to thank my dear friends and everyone who contributed in a way or another in my success. I am grateful for having all of these caring people in my life.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEDICATION</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECLARATION</td>
<td>ii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACKNOWLEDGMENTS</td>
<td>iii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TABLE OF CONTENTS</td>
<td>vi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIST OF FIGURES</td>
<td>xii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIST OF TABLES</td>
<td>xvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIST OF EQUATIONS</td>
<td>xvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS</td>
<td>xviii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABSTRACT</td>
<td>xxiv</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

1.1 General Overview

1.2 Colon and Colorectal Cancer

1.2.1 The Human Colon

1.2.2 Colorectal cancer

1.3 Curcumin

1.3.1 Chemical Properties of Curcumin

1.3.2 Therapeutic Properties of Curcumin

1.3.2.1 Antioxidant activity

1.3.2.2 Anti-Malarial activity

1.3.2.3 Anti-inflammatory activity

1.3.2.4 Anti-bacterial activity

1.3.2.5 Neuroprotective activity

1.3.2.6 Anti-cancer activity

1.3.3 Cocktail of CUR with conventional anticancer drugs

1.3.4 Clinical studies on CUR as an anticancer agent

1.4 Nanomedicine

1.4.1 Challenges in Nanomedicine

1.4.2 Types of “nanocarriers”

1.4.2.1 Polymeric nanoparticles

1.4.2.2 Micelles

1.4.2.3 Dendrimers

1.4.2.4 Liposomes
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.4.2.5 Solid Lipid Nanoparticles (SLN)</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.3 Methods of preparation for polymeric nanoparticles</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.3.1 Preparation methods from dispersion of preformed polymer</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.3.1.1 Solvent Evaporation</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.3.1.2 Nanoprecipitation</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.3.1.3 Emulsification/solvent diffusion</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.3.1.4 Salting-out technique</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.3.2 Preparation methods from dispersion of monomers</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.3.2.1 Emulsion polymerization</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.3.2.2 Interfacial Polymerization</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.3.3 Ionic Gelation</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.4 Nanomedicine in clinical practice</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.5 Nanoformulations of CUR</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 Drug Delivery to the colon</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.1 Strategies for targeted colonic therapy</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.1.1 Pro-drugs</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.1.2 pH- dependent systems</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.1.3 Time- dependent systems</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.1.4 Microbially- triggered systems</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.2 Mucoadhesion</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.2.1 Polymers used in mucoadhesion</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.2.1.1 Anionic polymers</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5.2.1.2 Cationic polymers</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6 Aims and objectives of the present research</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.1 Aims</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6.2 Colorectal cancer</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 2: FORMULATION OF CURCUMIN CHITOSAN PECTINATE NANO Particles</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Introduction</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.1 Polymer of choice 1: Chitosan</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.2 Polymer of choice 2: Pectin</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.3 Sodium tripolyphosphate (TPP) as the cross-linking agent</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.4 Particle size and zeta potential</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.5 Scanning Electron Microscopy (SEM)</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.6 Fourier Transform Infrared Spectroscopy</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.7 X-Ray Diffractometer</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.8 Differential Scanning Calorimetry</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.9 Aims and Objectives in this Chapter</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 Materials and Methods</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.1 Materials</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.2 Formulation of chitosan-pectinate composite nanoparticles</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.2.2.1 Preliminary formulations of CUR chitosan-pectinate composite nanoparticles based on order of addition
2.2.2.2 Sub-formulations and optimization of the preliminary formulation
2.2.3 Size and zeta potential measurement
2.2.4 SEM imaging
2.2.5 FT-IR analysis
2.2.6 XRD analysis
2.2.7 DSC analysis

2.3 Results and discussion

2.3.1 Particle size and zeta potential measurement
2.3.2 Morphology of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CS-PEC-NPs
2.3.3 FT-IR spectra
2.3.4 XRD data
2.3.5 DSC analysis

2.4 Conclusion

CHAPTER 3: MUCOADHESION, RELEASE, AND STABILITY STUDIES

3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 Mucin
3.1.2 Mucoadhesion process
3.1.3 High Performance Liquid Chromatography
3.1.3.1 HPLC analysis of CUR
3.1.4 Aims and Objectives

3.2 Materials and Methods

3.2.1 Materials
3.2.2 Mucoadhesion studies
3.2.3 HPLC assay for CUR
3.2.4 HPLC method validation
3.2.5 Determination of encapsulation efficiency and encapsulation capacity
3.2.6 CUR release from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs
3.2.6.1 CUR release from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in different simulated fluids
3.2.6.2 CUR release from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in simulated gastrointestinal tract fluids
3.2.7 Stability Studies
3.2.7.1 Storage
3.2.7.2 Photosensitivity
3.2.7.3 Thermal

3.3 Results and Discussion

3.3.1 Mucoadhesion studies
3.3.2 HPLC assay for quantification of CUR 124
3.3.3 Encapsulation efficiency (EE%) 127
3.3.4 CUR release from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs 128
3.3.5 Stability Studies 136
3.3.5.1 Storage stability studies 136
3.3.5.2 Protection of CUR from photodegradation 141
3.3.5.3 Protection of CUR from thermal degradation 144

3.4 Conclusion 146

CHAPTER 4: IN VITRO EVALUATION OF FORMULATION 147

4.1 Introduction 148
4.1.1 Cell culture 148
4.1.2 Cell lines 149
4.1.3 Fluorescence microscopy 150
4.1.4 Mycoplasma 152
4.1.5 MTT assay 153
4.1.6 Aims and objectives 154

4.2 Materials and methods 155
4.2.1 Materials 155
4.2.2 Maintenance of cell culture 156
4.2.3 Subculture of cells 156
4.2.4 Cells counting 156
4.2.5 Check for mycoplasma 157
4.2.6 MTT assay 158
4.2.6.1 MTT assay for HT-29 cells 158
4.2.6.2 MTT assay for MRC-5 cells 158
4.2.7 Cellular uptake 159
4.2.7.1 Qualitative cellular uptake 159
4.2.7.2 Quantitative cellular uptake 159
4.2.8 Cellular apoptosis viewed under fluorescent microscope 160
4.2.9 Statistical analyses 160

4.3 Results and discussion 160
4.3.1 Maintenance of HT-29 and MRC-5 cells 161
4.3.2 Mycoplasma detection 162
4.3.3 Cell viability assay 163
4.3.4 Morphological changes of cells by CUR-CS-PEC-NPs 171
4.3.5 Cellular uptake 174

4.4 Conclusion 179
CHAPTER 6: CONCLUSION AND FUTURE WORK

6.1 Conclusion

6.2 Suggestions for future work

LIST OF PUBLICATIONS FROM THE PRESENT WORK

References
LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1.1 The structure of the colon 4
Figure 1.2 Colorectal cancer stages 13
Figure 1.3 Turmeric 17
Figure 1.4 Chemical structure of curcumin 18
Figure 1.5 Curcumin mechanisms of action as an anti-inflammatory agent 25
Figure 1.6 Polymeric nanoparticles 37
Figure 1.7 Polymeric Micelles 39
Figure 1.8 Dendrimers 41
Figure 1.9 Liposomes 43
Figure 1.10 Solid Lipid Nanoparticles (SLN) 47
Figure 1.11 Illustration of preparation methods for polymeric nanoparticles 49
Figure 2.1 Schematic diagram of a typical dynamic light scattering technique 82
Figure 2.2 Schematic diagram of SEM components 84
Figure 2.3 Schematic diagram of the FT-IR 85
Figure 2.4 Schematic diagram of XRD components 86
Figure 2.5 Schematic diagram of DSC components 87
Figure 2.6 Sequence leading to formation of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs 95
Figure 2.7 SEM image of the optimized formulation CUR-CS-PEC-NPs at magnification 10000x (A) and 20000x (B) 100
Figure 2.8 FT-IR spectra of CUR (A), CS (B), PEC (C), TPP (D), CS-PEC-NPs (E), and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (F) 102
Figure 2.9 XRD patterns of CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs 103
Figure 2.10 DSC thermograms of CUR (A), CS (B), PEC (C), TPP (D), physical mixture of CUR, PEC, CS, and TPP (E), CS-PEC-NPs (F), and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (G). 105
Figure 3.1 CUR release at simulated GIT fluids 116
Figure 3.2 Schematic illustration of the penetration of polymeric NPs into the GIT mucosa

Figure 3.3 Changes in zeta potential of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CS-PEC-NPs in pH 1.2 (A), pH 6.8 (B), and pH 7.4 (C)

Figure 3.4 Schematic diagram of the drop in zeta potential in mucoadhesion

Figure 3.5 Representative chromatogram for CUR at 425 nm (5 µg/ml)

Figure 3.6 Standard calibration curve of CUR

Figure 3.7 Cumulative release profiles from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in pH 1.2, 6.8, and 6.4 (with pectinase)

Figure 3.8 FESEM images of PEC-free NPs (A,B) & CS-PEC-NPs (C,D) after treatment with 0.1 N HCl (pH 1.2)

Figure 3.9 % cumulative CUR release from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in simulated fluids

Figure 3.10 Morphology of fresh CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (A), and after exposure to treatment in SGF (B), SIF (C), and SCF (D)

Figure 3.11 Size, zeta potential, and pDI values of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs at days 1, 7, and 14 of shelf storage

Figure 3.12 Morphology of freshly CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (A), at day 7 (B) and day 14 (C) during storage at 4°C

Figure 3.13 % retention of CUR from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CUR ethanolic solution vials upon exposure to sunlight (A) and UV light at 253 nm (B)

Figure 3.14 Thermal stability of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CUR at 37 °C

Figure 4.1 Basic components of inverted fluorescence microscope

Figure 4.2 Mycoplasma positive cells after DAPI staining

Figure 4.3 Insoluble formazan precipitated inside and near viable cells

Figure 4.4 Hemacytometer grid (A) viable cells (not stained by trypan blue) inside the grid and at the interior perimeters are counted (B)

Figure 4.5 HT-29 cells (A,B) and MRC-5 cells (C,D) viewed under an inverted microscope under 20x and 40x magnification, respectively.

Figure 4.6 HT-29 cells viewed under fluorescence microscope with 430-495nm filter under 20x (A) and 40x (B) magnification

Figure 4.7 HT-29 cell viability after treatment with free CUR, void NPs (CS-PEC-NPs), and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs on days 1, 2, and 3, n=3
Figure 4.8 MRC-5 cell viability after treatment with free CUR, void NPs (CS-PEC-NPs), and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs on days 1, 2, and 3, n=5

Figure 4.9 Fluorescent nuclear images of untreated cells (A), cells treated with CS-PEC-NPs (B), DMSO (C), 75 µM (D) and 150 µM (E) of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, 75 µM (F) and 150 µM (G) of free CUR, and (H) 15 µM of 5-FU. Arrows indicate fragmentation and formation of irregular edges around the nuclei.

Figure 4.10 Fluorescence microscopy imaging of the cellular uptake of CUR from high and low equivalent doses of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and free CUR on days 1, 2, and 3. (20x magnification).

Figure 4.11 Retrieved CUR after treatment with high and low doses of free CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs on days 1, 2, and 3, n=3

Figure 5.1 Chromatogram for EST (10 µg/ml) and CUR (20 µg/ml)

Figure 5.2 Chemical structures of SP (A) and Theophylline (B)

Figure 5.3 Chromatograms for CAF (A), PIR (B), and theopyridine (C) under the same HPLC conditions

Figure 5.4 Chromatograms for EST and CUR using Heath et al. (2003b) method

Figure 5.5 Chromatogram of CUR at 425 nm

Figure 5.6 Chromatogram of SP dissolved in methanol using mobile phase ratio 70:30 (acetate buffer (pH 4) : acetonitrile)

Figure 5.7 Chromatograms of TP and SP at mobile phase ratio and detection wavelength of 70:30, 254 nm (A) and 80:20, 260 nm (B), respectively

Figure 5.8 Chromatograms of CUR (A) and SP (B) and their respective IS using the mobile phases as deproteinizing agent

Figure 5.9 Chromatograms of CUR (A) and SP (B) and their respective IS using methanol as deproteinizing agent

Figure 5.10 Chromatograms of pure solutions of CUR and EST (A) and SP and TP (B)

Figure 5.11 Chromatograms of the methanolic extract of blank human plasma using CUR (A) and SP (B) analytical methods

Figure 5.12 Chromatograms for spiked plasma showing CUR and EST (20 µg/ml, each) (A) and SP and TP (20 µg/ml, each)

Figure 5.13 Standard calibration curves of the peak response ratios of analyte to IS versus the corresponding concentration of CUR (A) and SP (B) in human plasma

Figure 5.14 Plasma concentration profile of CUR in rats after the oral administration of equivalent doses of free CUR (n=3) and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (n=4)
**LIST OF TABLES**

Table 1.1 Colorectal cancer stages 12
Table 1.2 Liposome-based products approved for human use 45
Table 1.3 Liposome-based products in clinical trials 46
Table 1.4 Selected nanomedicine products available in market 61
Table 1.5 Selected nanomedicine products in clinical development 63
Table 1.6 List of CUR nanoformulations available on market 65
Table 1.7 CUR nanoformulations under clinical development 66
Table 2.1 Composition of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs 90
Table 2.2 Particle size and zeta potential data obtained for formulations A, B, C, and D of CS-PEC-NPs and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, n=3 93
Table 2.3 Z-average, zeta potential, and pDI of CS-PEC-NPs AND CUR-CS-PEC-NPs as a function of formulation ratios, n=3 97
Table 2.4 Z-average, zeta potential, and pDI of CS-PEC-NPs AND CUR-CS-PEC-NPs as a function of stirring time, n=3 98
Table 2.5 Z-average, zeta potential, and pDI of CS-PEC-NPs AND CUR-CS-PEC-NPs as a function of stirring speed, n=3 99
Table 3.1 Precision and accuracy of the HPLC method. 127
Table 3.2 Zeta potential and percentage Retention of CUR in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs after exposure to pH 1.2 and 6.8, n=3 132
Table 5.1 Summary of HPLC method validation parameters for CUR (MP: 41:36:23:1 acetonitrile: water: methanol: glacial acetic acid, detected at 425 nm and 262 nm for CUR and EST, respectively) 213
Table 5.2 Summary of HPLC method validation parameters for SP (MP: 80:20 acetate buffer (pH 4): Acetonitrile, detected at 260 nm) 214
Table 5.3 Pharmacokinetic studies of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and free CUR 217
LIST OF EQUATIONS

Eq. 3.1: \( \% \text{EE}\% = \frac{\text{Total CUR added} - \text{unbound CUR}}{\text{Total CUR added}} \times 100\% \)  
113

Eq. 3.2: \( \% \text{released CUR} = \frac{\text{Amount of released CUR}}{\text{Amount of CUR initially added}} \times 100\% \)  
114

Eq. 3.3: \( \% \text{CUR retained} = \frac{\text{Amount of CUR from determined from analysis}}{\text{Amount of added CUR}} \times 100\% \)  
117

Eq. 3.4: \( \text{Limit of Detection} = 3.3 \times \frac{\text{Standard deviation of low conc.}}{\text{Slope of curve}} \)  
126

Eq. 3.5: \( \text{Limit of Quantification} = 10 \times \frac{\text{Standard deviation of low conc.}}{\text{Slope of curve}} \)  
126

Eq. 5.1: \( \% \text{CV} = \frac{\text{Standard deviation (SD)}}{\text{Mean concentration}} \times 100\% \)  
187

Eq. 5.2: \( \text{Relative error} = \frac{\text{mean measured concentration} - \text{true concentration}}{\text{True concentration}} \times 100\% \)  
187

Eq. 5.3: \( \% \text{Recovery} = \frac{\text{Mean concentration of drug in spiked plasma}}{\text{Mean concentration of pure drug solution}} \times 100\% \)  
188

Eq. 5.4: \( \text{LOD} = \frac{3 \times \text{SD of the LC}}{\text{Slope of the calibration curve}} \)  
188

Eq. 5.5: \( \text{LOQ} = \frac{10 \times \text{SD of the LC}}{\text{Slope of the calibration curve}} \)  
188
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5-ASA</td>
<td>5-amino salicylic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-FU</td>
<td>5-Fluorouracil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-HETE</td>
<td>5-hydroxyeicosatetraenoic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AA</td>
<td>Acrylic Acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACF</td>
<td>Aberrant Crypt Foci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFM</td>
<td>Atomic Force Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATPase</td>
<td>Adenosine Triphosphatase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUC</td>
<td>Area Under the Curve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BBB</td>
<td>Blood Brain Barrier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCL-2</td>
<td>B-cell lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BDMC</td>
<td>bis-demethoxycurcumin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAF</td>
<td>Caffeine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAR</td>
<td>CAL27-cisplatin resistant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEA</td>
<td>Carcinoembryonic antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$C_{\text{max}}$</td>
<td>Peak plasma concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C/LRP</td>
<td>Controlled/Living Radical Polymerization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMC</td>
<td>Critical Micelle Concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBMC</td>
<td>Carboxymethylcellulose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS</td>
<td>Chitosan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CUR</td>
<td>Curcumin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CV</td>
<td>Coefficient of Variation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAPI</td>
<td>4’,6’-diamidino-2-phenylindole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>Dynamic Light Scattering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMCO</td>
<td>Demethoxycurcumin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMEM</td>
<td>Dulbecco's Modified Eagle's Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMSO</td>
<td>Dimethylsulfoxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSC</td>
<td>Differential Scanning Calorimetry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Ethyl Cellulose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>Encapsulation Efficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESF</td>
<td>European Science Foundation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EST</td>
<td>17-β-Estradiol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBS</td>
<td>Foetal Bovine Serum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FESEM</td>
<td>Field Emission Scanning Electron Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIT</td>
<td>Faecal immunochemical testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FITC</td>
<td>Fluorescein Isothiocyannate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOLFOX</td>
<td>5-fluorouracil plus oxaliplatin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FT-IR</td>
<td>Fourier Transform Infrared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FtsZ</td>
<td>Filamenting temperature-sensitive mutant Z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gFOBT</td>
<td>Faecal Occult Blood Testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GIT</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal Tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GST</td>
<td>Glutathione S-transferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAT</td>
<td>Histone Acetyltransferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC</td>
<td>High Concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDACS</td>
<td>Histone deacetylases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HEPES</td>
<td>4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazineethanesulfonic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPLC</td>
<td>High Performance Liquid Chromatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBD</td>
<td>Inflammatory Bowel Diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFN-α</td>
<td>Interferon-α</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGF</td>
<td>Insulin-like Growth Factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IR</td>
<td>Infrared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IS</td>
<td>Internal Standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$K_a$</td>
<td>Absorption Rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$K_{el}$</td>
<td>Elimination rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC</td>
<td>Low Concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCST</td>
<td>Lower Critical Solution Temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDA</td>
<td>Laser Doppler Anemometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOD</td>
<td>Limit of Detection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOQ</td>
<td>Limit of Quantification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MALDI-TOF</td>
<td>Matrix-assisted Laser Desorption/ionization- Time of Flight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC</td>
<td>Mid Concentration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Mobile Phase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mTOR</td>
<td>Mammalian target of rapamycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTT</td>
<td>(3-(4,5-dimethylthiazolyl-2)-2,5-diphenyl tetrazolium bromide)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAG</td>
<td>NSAID-activated gene-I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NF-κB</td>
<td>Nuclear factor κB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIPAAM</td>
<td>N-isopropylacrylamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NrF2</td>
<td>Transcription Factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAA</td>
<td>Poly(acrylic acid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAMAM</td>
<td>Polyamidoamines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBS</td>
<td>Phosphate Buffered Saline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCL</td>
<td>Poly(epsilon-caprolactone)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCS</td>
<td>Photon Correlation Spectroscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDLLA</td>
<td>Poly(DL-Lactic acid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEC</td>
<td>Pectin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGE₂</td>
<td>Prostaglandin E₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pI</td>
<td>Isoelectric point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIR</td>
<td>Piroxicam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLA</td>
<td>Poly(lactide)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLGA</td>
<td>Poly (Lactide-c-glycolide)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLL</td>
<td>Poly(L-lysine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMMA-MMA</td>
<td>poly(methyl methacrylate-co-methacrylic acid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPI</td>
<td>Polyprolimines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSMA</td>
<td>Prostate Specific-membrane Antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PVA</td>
<td>Polyvinyl Alcohol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PVP</td>
<td>Polyvinylpyrrolidone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RME</td>
<td>Receptor Mediated Endocytosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RNS</td>
<td>Reactive Nitrogen Species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROS</td>
<td>Reactive Oxygen Species</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RP</td>
<td>Reversed phase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPMI-1640</td>
<td>Roswell Park Memorial Institute – 1640 Medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSD</td>
<td>Relative Standard Deviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCF</td>
<td>Simulated Colonic Fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>Standard Deviation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDH</td>
<td>Shikimate dehydrogenase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELDI-TOF</td>
<td>Surface-enhanced Laser Desorption/ ionization- Time of Flight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEM</td>
<td>Scanning Electron Microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGF</td>
<td>Simulated Gastric Fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIF</td>
<td>Simulated Intestinal Fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLN</td>
<td>Solid Lipid Nanoparticles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP</td>
<td>Sulphapyridine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSZ</td>
<td>Sulphasalazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_{1/2}$</td>
<td>Elimination half-life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBARS</td>
<td>Thiobarbituric acid relative substances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tc</td>
<td>Crystalline Transition Temperature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THF</td>
<td>Tetrahydrofuran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_{\text{max}}$</td>
<td>Time of occurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP</td>
<td>Theophylline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPP</td>
<td>Sodium Tripolyphosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSGs</td>
<td>Tumour-suppressor genes Guaiac-based</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UV</td>
<td>Ultraviolet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP</td>
<td>Vinylpyrrolidone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHO</td>
<td>World Health Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XRD</td>
<td>X-Ray Diffractometry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ABSTRACT

Curcumin, the active constituent of the rhizome *Curcuma longa* has been extensively studied as an anticancer agent for various types of tumours. However, its efficacy as an anticancer agent is constrained due to poor absorption, rapid metabolism, degradation in acidic media and consequently, low oral bioavailability. In the present study, we aim to formulate a curcumin-containing mucoadhesive nanoparticulate delivery system that offers protection to curcumin from the degradative effects of the upper digestive tract system but capable of releasing the payload in the colon for the localised treatment of colorectal cancer. Such a system should have a good surface coverage locally at the tumour site and ideally, capable of traversing the tumour. Thus, nanopariculate delivery is most suited to achieve this objective. The latter was formulated using chitosan and pectin as polymers due to their biodegradability and non-toxicity. The objectives of this study were (i) to fabricate, optimize and characterize the curcumin-containing delivery system; (ii) to evaluate the mucoadhesive propensity, release of curcumin from the carrier, and stability of the formulation in various milieu; (iii) to investigate the *in vitro* antiproliferative efficacy of the formulation as well as the cellular uptake profiles; and (iv) to proof the concept of the formulation using animal modules. The formulated nanoparticulate system had a z-average of 206.0 nm (± 6.6 nm), zeta potential of +32.8 mV (±0.5 mV), and encapsulation efficiency of 64%. The nanoparticles were more mucoadhesive at alkaline pH compared to acidic pH. Furthermore, more than 80% release of curcumin was achieved in simulated colonic medium as opposed to negligible release in simulated gastric and intestinal fluids, respectively. The nanoparticles were taken-up by HT-29 colorectal cancer cells which ultimately resulted in a tremendous reduction in cell propagation. This anti-proliferative effect of the encapsulated curcumin was similar to that of free curcumin at equivalent
doses which confirms that the encapsulation process did not affect the anticancer efficacy of curcumin. The bioavailability of curcumin from the nanoparticles was enhanced by 4-folds after oral administration after 6 hr of treatment. Moreover, the half-life, $C_{\text{max}}$, and AUC of curcumin were significantly improved. A lower elimination rate was observed from the formulation compared to equivalent doses of free curcumin. These findings are a strong indication of the potential of the studied formulation for the possible treatment of colon cancer via oral administration.
Chapter 1

Introduction
1 Introduction

1.1 General Overview

According to the World Health Organization (WHO) media centre key facts, 8.2 million deaths occurred worldwide in 2012 because of cancer, making it the leading cause of death among diseases. Unfortunately, the annual cancer cases are expected to jump up to 22 million in two decades from 2012 where it was 14 million case in that year (WHO media Center, 2014).

Despite recent advances in cancer therapy, treatment remains a challenging task. For example, surgery is associated with high risk of damage to nearby organs and tissues, pain, infections and recurrence of the disease (Bornstein et al., 1991; Cohen et al., 2000; Crawford et al., 2005; Gamba et al., 1992). While radiation therapy has common side effects like skin changes, fatigue, diarrhoea, nausea and vomiting and many others, which may affect the patient's quality of life (Bentzen, 2006; Dearnaley et al., 1999; Scholefield & Eng, 2014). Chemotherapy, being one of the most common cancer treatment options as neoadjuvant, adjuvant, or the sole therapy given has manifests serious side effects, including fatigue, pain, sores in the mouth and throat, nausea and vomiting as well as blood disorders (Farrell et al., 2013; Groopman & Itri, 1999; Molassiotis et al., 2014).

Plants have been extensively studied as a natural source for cancer treatment due to their proved efficacy in treating many types of cancer and the advantage that they manifest fewer side effects compared to the chemotherapeutic agents (Bhanot et al., 2011; Nirmala et al., 2011; Pezzuto, 1997).

Curcumin (CUR), commonly known as turmeric, is a natural polyphenol derived from rhizome of the plant Curcuma longa is one of the plant agents that has
showed anti-cancer activity through researches in the last 50 years (Adams et al., 2004; Kanai et al., 2012; Tang et al., 2010). Although CUR has an effective and safe colon anticancer activity (Cheng et al., 2013; Howells et al., 2011; Mudduluru et al., 2011), its beneficial effects are limited due to low absorption efficacy, rapid metabolism and elimination (Anand et al., 2012). Hence, there is the need to enhance the oral bioavailability of CUR via appropriate strategies. Using adjuvants like piperine, the oral bioavailability and delivery of CUR was improved by piperine inhibiting CUR's metabolizing enzymes (Bhutani et al., 2009; Yallapu et al., 2012). Micelles, liposomes and phospholipids complexes are other strategies under investigation (Anand et al., 2007). Recently, nanoparticle technology had a special interest as a drug delivery system for therapeutic agents (Yih and Al-Fandi, 2006; Hamidi et al., 2008) and explored for CUR as well. Poly(lactide-co-glycolide) (PLGA) based CUR nanoformulations were successful (Khalil et al., 2013) as well as chitosan (CS) CUR nanoparticles (NPs) (Chuah et al., 2011) and CUR loaded fibrinogen NPs (Sanoj et al., 2011).

We believe that delivering CUR in NPs to the colon is a good strategy for increasing the bioavailability at that region. In this regard, the delivery system should have the ability of protecting CUR from the onslaught acids and enzymes through its journey from the mouth to the colon. Since the cancer is restricted to the colon in colorectal cancer there is the likelihood of enhanced therapy with such a system. In a previous study, CUR-CS NPs were successfully fabricated in which these NPs demonstrated good mucoadhesive and anticancer properties (Chuah et al., 2011). In that study the effect of acid and enzymatic conditions on the mucoadhesive and anticancer properties of the NPs are not ascertained. The aim is to develop a nanoparticulate delivery system with enhanced mucoadhesive properties and able to
withstand the acidic and enzymatic conditions of the upper gastrointestinal tract (GIT). We also aim to prove the concept of the formulation using animal modules.

1.2 Colon and Colorectal Cancer

1.2.1 The Human Colon

The human colon (large intestine) is a muscular, U-shaped tube approximately 1.5 meters long in an average size adult. The colon is a part of the lower GIT that extends from the ileocaecal valve to the rectum.

The human colon (Figure 1.1) consists of the ascending and transverse segments, in which are the posterior segments, which lack mesentery. This is followed by the descending and sigmoid segments, which are the anterior and have mesentery. The four segments of the colon are sacculated. The caecum is poorly determined and continuous within the human colon (Kararli, 1995; Moran & Jackson, 1992).

![Image of colon segments](image.png)

Figure 1.1 The structure of the colon (Drawn using Chemdraw® Pro 8.0, PerkinElmer).

The wall of the colon, in cross-section, encompasses of a fine mucosal layer, thicker submucosal layer and the muscularis mucosae. The later comprises of two distinct layers, the circular and outer longitudinal layer, separated by a thin layer of connective tissues. Moreover, the muscularis mucosae is opulent with perirectal fat.
Compared to the small intestine, the colon luminal surface lacks well-defined villi, is less closely packed microvilli (if present) and does not differentiate into enterocytes (Kararli, 1995).

The colon develops during the embryological development phase from two parts: the ascending colon to the proximal transverse colon develops from the midgut while the distal transverse colon to sigmoid colon develops from the hind gut (Snell, 2008). The development subsists in three rotational phases. In the first phase, also called the temporary physiological intestinal herniation, the umbilical loop undergoes counterclockwise 90° rotation. This phase occurs in the 8th week of the embryological development. Followed by the second phase at the 10th week where a new counterclockwise 90° rotation occurs. Finally, the third stage, fixation stage, starts between the 11th and 12th week and ends with birth (Baud et al., 2008; Engin, 2015).

The pH values of the colonic fluids are 7.0 ±0.7, 6.6 ±0.8 and 6.4 ±0.6 in the left, mid and right colon, respectively. The colon pH depends highly on the type of the ingested food (Evans et al., 1988; Kararli, 1995). Transit time of food in the colon varies from 8-72 hr (Kararli, 1995).

The colon has various functions including water and electrolyte absorption, storing and evacuating stool, cistern function for bacterial metabolism and fermentation and metabolic functions. Approximately 1.5 L of materials passes through the colon daily, in which 1.3-1.4 L is absorbed and 0.1-0.2 L stool water is evacuated daily. The storage sites of the colon are the ascending and transverse segments while the aqueduct function is mainly executed by the descending and sigmoid segments (Kararli, 1995; Moran & Jackson, 1992). Within the GIT, the colon has the most abundant number and variety of microorganisms, approximating 7-10 log per gram per weight compared to
0-5 and 0-7 log per gram per weight in the stomach and small intestine, respectively. The colonic normal flora comprises of over 400 different species in which the anaerobic predominate, accounting for 99% of the cultivable organisms throughout the GIT. The beneficial bacteria in the colon play a major role in producing a variety of B-vitamins, folate and sulphur-containing amino acids that are absorbed from the colon. These bacteria also produce short chain fatty acids which contribute in the growth of the colonic mucosa and contribute in metabolism such as the hydrolysis of glucuronide conjugates (Canny & McCormick, 2008; Finegold & Angeles, 1969; Kararli, 1995; Moran & Jackson, 1992).

Colonic dysfunction may be manifested as motility or mucosal diseases. The former includes diarrhoea, constipation, irritable bowel syndromes and diverticular disease, while the latter includes polyps, inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), colonic infestation and carcinoma (Moran & Jackson, 1992). In the next section, I shall present salient features related to colorectal cancer and how it relates to the present investigation.

1.2.2 Colorectal cancer

According to the WHO media center (2014), colorectal cancer was the third most common type of cancer amongst men and the second amongst women leading to 694,000 worldwide deaths for the year 2012. In England, colorectal cancer was the fourth most common type of cancer in 2013, accounting for 12.6% and 10.4% of the registered cancer cases in males and females, respectively (Cancer registration statistics, 2015). In Malaysia, colorectal cancer is the most common type of cancer in males whilst it is the second one in females (Veettil et al., 2017).
Most colorectal tumours arise from benign adenomatous polyps from the mucosa followed by subsequent changes within the cells lining the bowels, eventually, leading to a malignant transformation and invasive carcinoma. In rare cases, some types of benign and malignant colorectal tumours may arise from other cell types like lymphocytes and muscles (Brown, 2007; Irving et al., 2010; Scholefield & Eng, 2014).

The etiological factors causing colorectal cancer are various including environmental, genetic susceptibility and somatic changes during the initiation and progression of benign adenomatous polyps from the mucosa. Several studies aimed at identifying specific genes causing colorectal cancer have presented two types of molecular defects: alterations in several oncogenes (K-ras) and alterations on tumour-suppressor genes (TSGs) (Brown, 2007).

Age is a major risk factor in colorectal cancer incidences and death rates. Over 90% of new colorectal cancer cases occur in patients at 50 years and older. However, since the 1990s, new colorectal cancer incidences have occurred in patients younger than 50 as well. Worldwide, men are at a greater risk of developing colorectal cancer than women. Although specific reasons for differences in incidence rates and mortality among gender are not well-understood but could be related to hormonal, genetic and environmental interaction (Gao et al., 2008; Scholefield & Eng, 2014). Colorectal cancer incidence rates and mortality vary geographically, where the highest rates are found in the developed and high-income countries like Australia and Canada, whilst presentation is generally lower in the developing countries (Fatima & Robin, 2009; Scholefield & Eng, 2014). However, this statistic is bound to change due to affluence in some previously categorised ‘low-income’ countries due to affluence or modifications in lifestyle. Although family history of colorectal cancer does not increase the rate of incidence of colorectal cancer through genetic predisposition, it is
nonetheless a major risk factor since it combines genetic and environmental factors to trigger manifestation. Having a first-degree relative diagnosed with colorectal cancer may double the risk of having the disease (Scholefield & Eng, 2014). Patients with a history of adenoma, prior colorectal cancer, prior large polyps, IBD, especially patients with history of long duration ulcerative colitis are at increased risk of developing colorectal cancer in their lifetime (Eaden et al., 2001; Gupta et al., 2007; Scholefield & Eng, 2014). Recent studies (Larsson et al., 2005; Deng et al., 2012; Shikata et al., 2013) have strongly supported the association between diabetes mellitus and the increased risk of developing colorectal cancer in both men and women. Two mechanisms have been proposed: (i) inhibition of insulin-like growth factors (IGF) binding proteins, which increases the free and bioavailable IGF-I, and (ii) increased concentrations of faecal bile acids (Larsson et al., 2005; Shikata et al., 2013). However, long-term insulin therapy has also been associated with increased risk of colorectal cancer as well (Larsson et al., 2005; Deng et al., 2012; Shikata et al., 2013). Several modifiable lifestyle risk factors immensely increase the incidence rates of colorectal cancer including heavy alcohol consumption, smoking, red and processed meat consumption, obesity, and low physical activity (Fedirko et al., 2011; Huxley et al., 2009; Kirkegaard et al., 2010; Ogino & Stampfer, 2010).

A third of colorectal cancer cases, especially at the early stages of the disease, are asymptomatic. Moreover, other bowel diseases such as ulcerative colitis, diverticulosis and irritable bowel syndrome manifest symptoms similar to those with colorectal cancer. Some of the symptoms associated with colorectal cancer are abdominal pain, change in bowel habit, and rectal bleeding. Moreover, most of the patients are diagnosed with anaemia and positive faecal occult blood tests. Other symptoms include fatigue, anorexia, diarrhoea, constipation, nausea, vomiting, rectal
pain, and the presence of mucus in stools. Studies have shown no association between the symptoms of the disease and age or gender of the patient. However, some symptoms can be correlated with the location of the disease (Majumdar et al., 1999). The presence of anaemia besides any other symptom of fatigue, anorexia, abdominal pain, nausea, or vomiting is associated with proximal colorectal cancer. While the presence of altered stool consistency, rectal bleeding besides any other symptom of diarrhoea, rectal pain, tenesmus, or mucus in stools are associated with distal colorectal cancer (Majumdar et al., 1999; Miskovitz & Betancourt, 2005; Adelstein et al., 2011). In some cases, patients may have phlebitis and pulmonary embolism because of the breaking and lodging of blood clots in one of the vessels feeding the lungs during its migration through the veins back to the heart. Disruptions to the immune system before, during, or after colorectal cancer diagnosis cause shingles. In advanced stages, the cancer may metastasizes to the other organs in which organ-specific symptoms appear. For example, symptoms of cancer spreading to the liver include jaundice, low blood concentration of albumin, coagulation disturbances, bleeding, and pain localized in the upper-right part of the abdomen, which may radiate to the back or the right shoulder. If the colorectal cancer has spread to the lungs, symptoms start as a simple cough that increase in intensity, accompanied with blood, shortness of breath, tightness and chest discomfort at later stages (Adrouny, 2002).

Early detection and accurate diagnosis of colorectal cancer are major prognostic factors for optimal treatment and higher survival rates. Since colorectal cancer symptoms appear at a later stage of the disease, regular population screening is essential for early detection of colorectal cancer. However, physical examination, including abdomen palpitation and digital rectal exam cannot detect the signs of colorectal cancer. Therefore, specific colorectal cancer screening procedures ought to be used (Miskovitz,
Guaiac-based faecal occult blood testing (gFOBT) technology has been used for several years. Guaiac is capable of detecting peroxidase activity of haem but not the degradation products of haem. Besides, Guaiac does not detect dietary haem. The gFOBT technology is more sensitive in detecting bleeding lesions in the colon compared to the upper GIT. However, gFOBT has low clinical applications due to the low analytical sensitivity and the fact that bleeding is intermittent in colorectal cancer cases in general (Scholefield & Eng, 2014). Faecal immunochemical testing (FIT) assays the antibodies targeting human haemoglobin. Qualitative and quantitative FIT tests are available which are specific for human haemoglobin. However, qualitative FIT analytical sensitivity is low and hence, results in high false positive rates. Furthermore, haemoglobin quantification has low accuracy and varies among different faecal compositions. However, the usage of gFOBT in combination with FIT reduces the false positive rates (Scholefield & Eng, 2014).

Flexible sigmoidoscopy has been proposed as the primary screening method for colorectal cancer at the age of 60, along with adenomas removal. A highly specific and sensitive screening modality is the colonoscopy, providing visualization of the large bowel besides the ability to remove the adenomas. In addition, colonoscopy is highly sensitive in polyp detection. However, using colonoscopy in the population screening is still controversial. Besides this, both of the flexible sigmoidoscopy and colonoscopy are, in some cases, associated with morbidity and mortality (Scholefield & Eng, 2014).

New promising screening approaches have recently been developed, including, the DNA microarray-based tumour gene expression profiles, DNA methylation measurements of specific protein panels (Ramaswamy et al., 2001). Others include detection of specific RNAs associated with colorectal cancer, using techniques like surface-enhanced laser desorption/ ionization - Time of flight (SELDI-TOF) and
matrix-assisted laser desorption/ionization - Time of flight (MALDI-TOF), mass spectrograph and trained Labrador retriever to detect colorectal cancer by the smell of breadth and watery stool (Ramaswamy et al., 2001; Scholefield & Eng, 2014). Once invasive colorectal cancer has been diagnosed, pathologists will recommend further pathological examinations. Surgical biopsy of the colon and lymph nodes are usually recommended for studying the spread and prognosis of the disease (Miskovitz, 2010).

The stage in the development of colorectal cancer is fundamental in determining the optimum treatment plan and prognosis. Dukes et al., (1932) established the first colorectal cancer staging. Dukes’ classification is based on the depth of colorectal cancer in the bowel wall, in addition to the embroilment of nearby lymph nodes. Colorectal cancer that does not exceed the mucosa is classified as stage A. Stage B involves deeper tissues but outside the rectum and without the involvement of the lymph nodes whilst stage C involves the lymph nodes. A later modification of Dukes’ classification is called the Astler-Coller modification which includes stage D, where the colorectal cancer spreads to other organs (Adrouny, 2002). Further modification and specifications of Dukes’ classification led to the current staging system, the TNM staging system, adopted by the American Joint Committee for Cancer Staging and End Results. This staging system is categorized into three junctures. The T stage (T) reflects the size and extent of spreading of the cancer to the nearby tissues and organs. Second category symbolized (N), reflects the involvement of the nearby lymph nodes. The final stage (M), shows the presence or absence of cancer spreading to distant areas of the body (Miskovitz, 2010). After determining the TNM category, another staging process, called the stage grouping, is further determined. The stage grouping phases are summarized in Table 1.1 and illustrated in Figure 1.2 (American Cancer Society, 2004; Connell et al., 2004). Regardless of the stage in the colorectal cancer, the location of
the tumour is another prognostic determinant. Colon carcinomas might be easier to recover compared to rectal carcinoma at the same stage of development. Moreover, within the colon itself, the ascending and sigmoid colon carcinomas have better recovery outcomes compared to the transverse and descending colon carcinoma at the same stage (Miskovitz, 2010).

Table 1.1 Colorectal cancer stages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>5-year survival rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>Earliest stage of cancer, in which has not exceeded the mucosa of the colon or rectum. Also called carcinoma in situ or intramucosal carcinoma.</td>
<td>&gt;90%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>The cancer has penetrated the mucosa into the submucosa or into the muscularis propria yet, has not spread to the nearby lymph nodes or distant areas.</td>
<td>93.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
<td>The cancer has penetrated the wall of the colon or rectum into the outermost layers yet, has not spread to the nearby lymph nodes or distant areas.</td>
<td>84.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIB</td>
<td>The cancer has penetrated the wall of the colon or rectum into other nearby tissues or organs yet, has not spread to the nearby lymph nodes or distant areas.</td>
<td>72.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
<td>The cancer has penetrated the mucosa into the submucosa or into the muscularis propria and has spread to one to three nearby lymph nodes. Distant areas are not involved.</td>
<td>83.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
<td>The cancer has penetrated the wall of the colon or rectum into other nearby tissues or organs and has spread to one to three nearby lymph nodes. Distant areas are not involved.</td>
<td>64.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIC</td>
<td>The cancer has spread to four or more nearby lymph nodes regardless of extent of penetration in the colon or rectum. Distant areas are not involved.</td>
<td>44.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>The cancer has spread to distant areas like lung, liver, ovary or peritoneum regardless the extent of penetration in the colon or rectum and nearby lymph nodes involvement.</td>
<td>8.1%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 1.2 Colorectal cancer stages (Drawn by Chemdraw®Pro 8.0, PerkinElmer and Microsoft paint® 1709)
On the basis of the progression of the disease, colorectal cancer treatment and prognosis depend on the depth of the tumour, the extent of lymph node’s involvement, and the metastases of the disease to other organs (Miskovitz, 2010). The standard treatment options for colorectal cancer are surgery, radiofrequency ablation, cryosurgery, chemotherapy, radiation therapy and targeted therapy (Solbiati et al., 2001; Miskovitz, 2010; Berman et al., 2016; Martling et al., 2016). Surgery, is the standard treatment option for all stages of colorectal cancer, in addition to liver metastasis and recurrent disease cases (Berman et al., 2016). Surgery can be performed either as a local excision, colon resection or laparoscopic surgery (Miskovitz, 2010; Brown, 2007). Postoperative side effects include pulmonary complications, abnormal wound healing, bowel perforation, abscesses, fistula, haemorrhage, infection, and sexual dysfunction and urinary retention in men (Milsom et al., 1998; Miskovitz, 2010; Scappaticci et al., 2005). Radiation therapy is another local treatment option for stages II and III (Table 1.1), however it is usually used as an adjuvant treatment with chemotherapy, pre- or post-surgery to decrease the local recurrence and increase survival rates (Birgisson et al., 2005; Miskovitz, 2010; Berman et al., 2016). Unfortunately, radiation therapy is associated with long-lasting side effects including impotency in men and vaginal dryness in women (Miskovitz, 2010). Other side effects of radiation therapy include gastrointestinal complications, bowel obstruction, skin irritation, fatigue and the occurrence of a secondary primary cancer (Birgisson et al., 2005; Martling et al., 2016; Miskovitz, 2010). Chemotherapy has been used for colorectal cancer treatment since the 1950s. It is the standard treatment option for stages III and IV (Table 1.1), liver metastases and recurrent colorectal cancer and it is usually administered as an adjuvant with surgery or radiation therapy (Miskovitz, 2010; Berman et al., 2016). Numerous chemotherapeutic agents are used for colorectal cancer
either as a mono or combined therapy including 5-fluorouracil (5-FU), irinotecan, capecitabine, leucovorin, and oxaliplatin (Cutsem et al., 2015; Miskovitz, 2010). Unfortunately, chemotherapy is associated with a long list of debilitating side effects including nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, sore mouth, myelosuppression, immunosuppression, hair loss (Coates et al., 1983; Wu et al., 2005), mucositis (Buhl et al., 1999), hepatotoxicity (Rubbia-Brandt et al., 2004), and anemia (Groopman & Itri, 1999). The radio-frequency ablation is an image-guided procedure that includes the ablation of the tumour using ion agitation produced by electrodes. Intraperitoneal haemorrhage, hepatic abscesses, GIT perforation, and portal hypertension (Livraghi et al., 2003; Solbiati et al., 2001; Wood et al., 2000). In cryosurgery, tumours are frozen using cryoprobes and left to be reabsorbed. Although this technique sacrifices less normal tissues compared to surgery, it cannot be used in multiple metastases cases (Onik et al., 1991). Cryosurgery is associated with a phenomenon called “cryoshock phenomenon” which includes multi-organ failure, intravascular coagulation and severe coagulopathy, besides liver failure, abscess, bile fistula, and wound infection (Seifert & Morris, 1998; Seifert et al., 1999). Immunotherapy is a new approach in which antibodies are used to help the patient’s immune system fight cancer cells. Side effects include flu-like symptoms, nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, and rash (Miskovitz, 2010). Due to the aforementioned side effects associated with chemotherapy, there is an interest in discovering alternative agents that are just as effective but manifest fewer side effects. It has been proposed that chemotherapeutic agents from plant origin fit this requirement because they are natural. In the next section, I would describe in detail some of the salient features of one such compound, CUR, that has received significant attention in the past decade.
1.3 Curcumin

Turmeric (Figure 1.3), the powdered rhizome of the plant *Curcuma longa*, has been anciently used in the Indian subcontinent as food preservative, dye due to its distinctive yellow colour, and as a spice (Aggarwal *et al.*, 2007). Starting from the time of Ayurveda (1900 BC), turmeric was therapeutically used as an anti-inflammatory, wound healing, scars lightening, in cosmetics (Aggarwal *et al.*, 2007), cure for jaundice, digestive enhancer, appetite suppressant, treating stomach and liver problems, and in cosmetics (Steinhauser, 2015; Wattenberg *et al.*, 1992). Arab merchants introduced turmeric to Europe in the 13th century and was named “Indian saffron” (Aggarwal *et al.*, 2007).

Researchers have found that CUR (diferuloylmethane) (3%) is the active ingredient of the spice turmeric and is responsible for its therapeutic activities (Steinhauser, 2015). CUR currently a subject of extensive studies due to acclaimed variety of therapeutic potential including anti-inflammatory, antiangiogenic, chemotherapeutic, antioxidant, hepatoprotective, immunomodulation, treatment of arthritis, lung fibrosis, gallstone, cardiovascular disease, among others (Ravindran *et al.*, 2007; Braun & Cohen, 2010; Aggarwal *et al.*, 2007).
1.3.1 Chemical Properties of Curcumin

The chemical profile of turmeric indicates a composition of several phytochemicals including CUR, demethoxycurcumin (DMCO), bis-demethoxycurcumin (BDMC), turmerone, and curlone (Sasikumar, 2012). In addition to other nutrients including protein, carbohydrates, phosphorous, and potassium, among others (Hegde et al., 2013; Nair, 2013). However, it is believed that the curcuminoid, CUR, imparts the distinctive yellow colour to turmeric and is responsible for the wide variety of the therapeutic activities of the spice (Hegde et al., 2013).

CUR has a bright yellow colour even at very low doses (Boga et al., 2013; Nair, 2013). It gives red and yellow coloured solutions in basic and acidic media, respectively (Bernabé-pineda et al., 2004). It is reported to have a UV-absorption maxima at 420-430 nm, attributed to its conjugated diaryl heptanoid chromophore (Bernabé-pineda et al., 2004; Nair, 2013; Sasikumar, 2012). CUR also exhibits fluorescence under UV light, and it has a distinct fluorescent excitation and emission at 435 and 520 nm, respectively (Nair, 2013; Park & Lee, 2015; Priyadarsini, 2009).
CUR was first isolated and obtained from turmeric in the 19th century (Aggarwal et al., 2007) and is estimated to comprise of 2-7% of turmeric constituents (Sasikumar, 2012). The chemical structure of CUR is $1,7\text{-bis}(4\text{-hydroxy}-3\text{-methoxy}-\text{phenyl})\text{-1,6-heptadiene-3,5-dione}$ (Figure 1.4) (Sharma et al., 2005; Chen et al., 2006; Maheshwari et al., 2006; Sasikumar, 2012).

![Figure 1.4 Chemical structure of CUR](image)

The molecular formula of CUR is $C_{21}H_{20}O_6$, its molecular weight is 368.39 Da (Hegde et al., 2013; Lin & Lin, 2008). It has a melting point of 183 °C (Aggarwal et al., 2006) and pKa values of 7.8, which is attributed to the acetylacetone group, 8.5 and 9.0 which are attributed to the hydrogen of the phenol groups (Hjorth et al., 2002; Bernabé-pineda et al., 2004). It acts as a potent H-atom donor at pH 3-7, whereas it mainly acts as an electron donor at pH above 8 (Barzegar, 2012). This therapeutic agent is insoluble in water, however, it is easily soluble in ethanol and acetone (Hjorth et al., 2002; Hegde et al., 2013). Since it is a bis-$\alpha,\beta$-unsaturated diketone, it exists in equilibrium with the corresponding tautomer in solution. This bis-keto form predominates in acidic and neutral conditions, while the enol tautomer predominates at pH values above 8 (Aggarwal & Sung, 2008; Anand et al., 2008; Boga et al., 2013). In alkali conditions, CUR dissociates forming feruloyl methane, ferulic acid, and vanillin...
(Hjorth et al., 2002; Nair, 2013). CUR has the ability to dimerise into at least two dimeric species (Daniel et al., 2004).

Stability-wise, CUR is considered unstable and especially pH dependant. It is least stable at acidic conditions (Bernabé-pineda et al., 2004; Manju & Sreenivasan, 2011; Shen & Ji, 2012). In addition, CUR has poor photostability (Hjorth et al., 2002). In-vitro studies showed that CUR undergoes degradation in cell culture medium containing 10% foetal bovine serum (FBS) (Shen & Ji, 2012). Unfortunately, there are not that many studies aimed at studying the stability of CUR. In vivo, however, dihydroferulic acid and ferulic acid have been identified in the bile after oral administration of CUR which reflects it degradation (Shen & Ji, 2012). Surprisingly, some of CUR’s degradation products like ferulic acid and vanillin have higher aqueous solubility compared to the parent and hence, similar biological activities (Shen & Ji, 2012).

1.3.2 Therapeutic Properties of Curcumin

Research in recent years have focused on the therapeutic effects of CUR as an alternative to several pharmacological activities (Priyadarsini, 2014). Several studies have confirmed the efficacy of CUR as an anti-inflammatory, antimalarial, antibacterial, antioxidant, and anticancer agent (Biology et al., 2009; Priyadarsini, 2014; Epstein et al., 2017).

Available preparations of CUR for research and clinical trials contain three major curcuminoids, difruloyl methane commonly known as curcumin (CUR), DMCO, and BDMC (Jurenka & Ascp, 2009). Comparative studies have shown different therapeutic potencies for the three analogues. For example, Rubya et al.,(1995) found that BMDC is the most potent cytotoxic agent amongst the three analogues. Whereas
Tamvakopoulos et al., (2007) found that DMC was the most stable in cultured cells and most potent as an anticancer agent when compared to the other two analogues. Wei et al., (2006) found that the three analogues have similar antioxidative activities. In contrast, Selvam et al., (2005) found that CUR was more potent as an antioxidant and antiinflammatory agent. Anand et al., (2008) compared various therapeutic activities of the three analogues and found that BDMC is the most potent cytotoxic agent against ovarian cancer cells, DMC is the most potent antiproliferative agent against breast cancer cells, and BDMC and CUR have similar efficacies in preventing colon carcinogenesis. In the next section, I shall give a detailed review of the diverse therapeutic activities of CUR.

1.3.2.1 Antioxidant activity

Oxygen is an obligatory element for living cells and it is contributed in the majority of the crucial biological activities (Sen et al., 2010; Shinde et al., 2012). However, during cellular utilization of oxygen, two major types of by-products called free radicals are produced, reactive oxygen species (ROS) and reactive nitrogen species (RNS) (Sen et al., 2010). ROS includes free radicals and non-radical molecular species (like H₂O₂) (Lushchak, 2014). Free radicals are produced when electrons from the reactive enzymes are transferred to molecular oxygen. Therefore, the oxygen molecule contains one or more unpaired electrons in the outermost orbital (Halliwell, 2012; Kunwar & Priyadarsini, 2011). Besides this, free radicals can be introduced to the body by external factors including UV radiation, cigarettes smoking (Shinde et al., 2012), X-rays, pollutants, interaction with chemicals (Sen et al., 2010), auto-mobile fumes, burning of organic matter during cooking, to mention few (Lobo et al., 2010).
Free radicals are generally involved in chain reactions and are eventually terminated by their destruction (Sen et al., 2010). They are biologically eliminated through a complicated antioxidant system that neutralize the excessive levels of free radicals (Lushchak, 2014). This system includes enzymes such as catalases, superoxide dismutases, and glutathione peroxidases (Sen et al., 2010) in addition to non-enzymatic molecules like albumin, ceruloplasmin, ferritin, and lactoferritin (Bayomi et al., 2013). Normally, a balance between free radical formation and elimination is preserved, however, disturbing this steady state leads to excessive build-up of free radicals leading to a condition called oxidative stress. In this state, serious cellular structural changes and cellular mutations occur (Shinde et al., 2012). The prolonged state of oxidative stress leads to the development of chronic and degenerative diseases such as aging, arthritis, cancer, haemorrhage, hypoxia, cardiovascular and neurodegenerative diseases (Sen et al., 2010; Shinde et al., 2012; Bayomi et al., 2013; Trujillo et al., 2013).

CUR shows a distinctive antioxidant activity similar to those of vitamins C, E and β-carotene (vitamin A) through several pathways (Akram et al., 2010). The phenolic group of CUR scavenge free radicals and hence, prevent lipid peroxidation (Lim et al., 2001; Ataie et al., 2010). In addition, CUR acts indirectly through the interaction with the reactive species to induce the activity of antioxidants and cytoprotective enzymes (Bhullar et al., 2013; Nakmareong et al., 2011; Trujillo et al., 2013). For instance, Nakmareong et al.,(2011) found that CUR stimulates vasorelaxation of the isolated porcine coronary artery in addition to its ability to prevent and treat vascular dysfunction in lipopolysaccharide induced endotoxemia.
1.3.2.2 Anti-Malarial activity

Malaria, a disease caused by the plasmodium parasite, is an epidemic and deadly disease effecting 300-500 million individuals every year (Reddy et al., 2005; Mishra et al., 2009; Mimche et al., 2011). Quinine and artemisinin are the drugs of choice for malaria treatment (Mimche et al., 2011). However, malaria remains a frightening worldwide epidemic partially due to the parasite’s resistance to available anti-malarial drugs (Cui et al., 2007). Moreover, use of current anti-malarial drugs is restrained due to high cost, short half-life, and limited supply (Reddy et al., 2005; Mishra et al., 2011). Therefore, there is an urgent need to find alternative treatment regimens or develop newer antimalarial drugs and combinational cocktails to overcome drug resistance.

Recent in vitro and in vivo studies have found that CUR possesses moderate to potent anti-malarial activity through several pathways, including the following (Reddy et al., 2005; Nandakumar et al., 2006; Cui et al., 2007; Mimche et al., 2011):

i. Down-regulation of histone acetyltransferase (HAT) and histone deacetylases (HDACs), that interferes with histone acetylation and hence, causes DNA damage.

ii. Generation of ROS in malaria parasite, which induces DNA damage (peroxidant activity).

iii. Binding to the malarial sarco endoplasmic reticulum calcium adenosine triphosphatase (ATPase) causing metabolic arrest.

iv. Immunomodulatory activities.

v. Anti/protozoan activity.

Recently, research has been devoted towards using CUR in combination with anti-malarial agents not only to overcome the latters’ limited use, due to drug resistance,
recrudescence, and high cost, but also to enhance the therapeutic efficacy of both drugs and decrease cytotoxicity (Mishra et al., 2009; Reddy et al., 2005). For example, oral administration of CUR followed by artemisinin injection prevented retrogression of the disease (Nandakumar et al., 2006). In another study, Mishra et al. (2011) found that combination of CUR with andrographolide and artesunate enhanced andrographolide anti-malarial effect and decreased the chance of drug resistance without any toxicity.

1.3.2.3 Anti-inflammatory activity

Inflammation processes as such are essential for the body. For example, acute inflammation helps in pathogens prevention. However, chronic and untreated inflammations can eventually lead to cancer and other chronic diseases (Basnet & Skalko-basnet, 2011). Normally, pro-inflammatory factors target free radicals, NF-κB, TNF-α, and NSAID-activated gene-1 (NAG) which, mediate the inflammation. Excessive and uncontrolled exposure to these molecules can lead to chronic diseases (Basnet & Skalko-basnet, 2011). Therefore, the use of anti-inflammatory agents such as NSAIDs, COX-2 inhibitors, and TNF-α inhibitors is necessary to avoid the debilitating effects of uncontrolled inflammation (Basnet & Skalko-basnet, 2011). In the last two decades, CUR has been extensively studied as a natural and potent anti-inflammatory agent for numerous inflammatory conditions, including pancreatitis, postoperative inflammation, rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis (Jurenka & Ascp, 2009), uveitis, H. Pylori infections, irritable bowel syndrome, and IBD (Jacob et al., 2007).

The anti-inflammatory effects of CUR is now established and several mechanisms have been proposed as summarized in Figure 1.5 (Chan et al., 1998;
Figure 1.5 CUR mechanisms of action as an anti-inflammatory agent
1.3.2.4 Anti-bacterial activity

The world is facing a major challenge in antibiotic resistance. The continuous evolution of antibiotic resistance is due to therapeutic use, misuse, and abuse of antibiotics (Mun et al., 2013). In addition, ineffectiveness, unfavourable adverse effects, non-compliance, and high cost of conventional therapy have changed the path of antibacterial research towards developing natural alternatives such as CUR (De et al., 2009; Naz et al., 2010).

Researchers have found that CUR acts as a potent antibacterial agent against several gram-positive and gram-negative bacterial strains, such as *E. coli*, *Y. enterocolitica*, *M. tuberculosis*, *S. aureus*, *S. epidermidis*, *Salmonella*, *P. sudomonas*, and *H. pylori* (Bhullar et al., 2013; Chattopadhyay et al., 2004; Mun et al., 2013; Naz et al., 2010; Rai et al., 2008; Vimala et al., 2011). The phenolic groups in CUR form H-bonds with the amino/hydroxyl and hydroxyl groups of the bacterial protein and cellulose polymers, respectively (Ammayappan & Moses, 2009). Moreover, researchers believe that CUR acts as a non-competitive inhibitor of Shikimate dehydrogenase (SDH), thus reduction in the synthesis of the bacterial essential metabolites (De et al., 2009). Furthermore, CUR binds to tubulin and perturbs microtubule polymerization, inhibits the polymerization of the Filamenting temperature-sensitive mutant Z (FtsZ) which perturbs its functions and therefore, leads to inhibition of bacterial proliferation (Ammayappan & Moses, 2009; Kaur et al., 2010; Rai et al., 2008), blocks bacterial respiratory enzymes pathways (Vimala et al., 2011). Finally, CUR has phototoxic effects against *Salmonella* and *E. coli* (Rai et al., 2008).
1.3.2.5 Neuroprotective activity

Neurodegenerative diseases result in an irreversible loss of functional neurons, which results in major mechanical, physiological, and psychological disabilities. Therefore, prophylaxis in highly risked patients is vital (Cole et al., 2007). Researchers found that CUR acts as a potent neuro- and cytoprotective agent and hence, can be used in the prophylaxis and treatment of neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer’s, Parkinson’s, stroke, head trauma, Huntingtin’s diseases (Thiyagarajan & Sharma, 2004) in addition to its protective effects against cerebral, cardiac, and renal ischemia (Jiang et al., 2007).

CUR is believed to possess neuroprotective effects through its anti-oxidant, anti-inflammatory, and anti-protein aggregation activities (Rajakrishnan et al., 1999; Cole et al., 2007; Yang et al., 2009). It protects the brain from damage through several pathways; it regulates the transcription factor (Nrf2) expression (Yang et al., 2009), inhibits and reverses lipid peroxidation (Complexes et al., 2003; Bala et al., 2006), enhances glutathione content in the brain, and enhances Na⁺, K⁺, -ATPase activity (Rajakrishnan et al., 1999; Bala et al., 2006). Moreover, it prevents peroxynitrite mediated blood-brain barrier disruption (Jiang et al., 2007). Due to its phenolic structure, CUR decreases the levels of thiobarbituric acid relative substances (TBARS) and reduces the levels of cholesterol, phospholipids, and free fatty acids in the brain (Rajakrishnan et al., 1999).

1.3.2.6 Anti-cancer activity

Of particular importance to the present research is the anticancer activity of CUR. Apoptosis is an essential morphological programed cell death that plays a critical role in the development and tissue homeostasis (Elmore, 2007). It is characterized by
cell shrinkage, membrane blistering and chromatic condensation that eventually, results in cell fragmentation (Hockenbery et al., 1993). Apoptosis is a sophisticated autonomous- genetic program for cell death that requires energy and involves the activation of “caspases”. Caspases are cysteine proteases that are involved in complex events responsible for linking the initiating stimuli to the final vanishing of cells (Hockenbery et al., 1993; Elmore, 2007). Essentially, two major pathways drive apoptosis: the extrinsic and intrinsic (mitochondrial) pathways (Adams & Cory, 2007). The former pathway activates caspase-8 whereas the later activate caspase-9. Subsequently, caspase-8 and -9 activate effector caspases (3,7,6) that mediate cellular destruction. On the other hand, the B-cell lymphoma 2 (Bcl-2) protein controls the intrinsic pathway. Disruption of apoptosis in either pathway results in autoimmune and malignant diseases (Adams & Cory, 2007; Mulik et al., 2010a).

Research in the last 60 years has found that CUR has potential antitumor effects via suppression of tumour initiation, progression, metastasis of several tumour cells such as colon, epidermis, breast tumours, among others (Johnson et al., 2009). In addition, CUR can sensitize and overcome resistance against several agents that induce apoptosis (Tamvakopoulos et al., 2007). Several researchers reported that CUR significantly inhibits colon tumorigenesis in the initiation and post-initiation stages (Anderson, 2003; Maheshwari et al., 2006). Moreover, Mulik et al.,(2010) found that the oral administration of synthetic CUR immensely inhibited the incidence of adenocarcinoma in the progression stage.

The exact mechanism of the anti-tumour effects of CUR is not fully understood, however, various mechanisms have been proposed. CUR suppresses proliferation induced by cancer growth factors and modulate various cell-signalling pathways such as Nrf2, cyclooxygenases, and mitogen-activated protein kinase (Maheshwari et al.,
2006; Mulik et al., 2010). Furthermore, CUR induces apoptosis through both the mitochondria dependant and independent mechanisms (Adams & Cory, 2007). CUR inhibits nuclear factor κB (NF-κB) which subsequently downregulates gene products such as Bcl-2 (Maheshwari et al., 2006). CUR also induces apoptosis by downregulating AKt/ mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) pathway (Johnson et al., 2009). Moreover, CUR inhibits tolemerase activity, downregulate Notch-1 signalling, anti-apoptotic proteins, cytochrome C release and caspases-3 and -9 activation (Tamvakopoulos et al., 2007). CUR induces p53 and alternate redox status of the cells in which both induce apoptosis (Aoki et al., 2007; Dandawate et al., 2012).

1.3.3 Cocktail of CUR with conventional anticancer drugs

Several chemotherapeutic agents have been used in cancer treatment however, the use of these agents have been restricted due to high cost, toxicity, drug resistance that leads to the recurrence of diseases (Kunnumakkara et al., 2007; Sreekanth et al., 2011). Therefore, combination therapy was proposed as an alternative for enhancing chemotherapeutic efficacy, particularly in agents with different mechanisms of actions (Kunnumakkara et al., 2007). Furthermore, combination therapy decreases the chances of resistance development or toxicity (Kunnumakkara et al., 2007). Researchers have studied the effectiveness of combining CUR with conventional chemotherapeutic agents in order to sensitize cancer cells towards the chemotherapeutic agents and decrease the chances of toxicity (Hour et al., 2002; Nautiyal et al., 2011; Sreekanth et al., 2011).

5-FU plus oxaliplatin (FOLFOX) is considered the backbone cocktail in colorectal cancer chemotherapy. However, its toxicity and ineffectiveness have urged researchers to investigate combining FOLFOX with a non-toxic but effective agent. Yu
et al., (2009) investigated using either CUR alone or in combination with FOLFOX, as a treatment and prophylaxis agent against colorectal cancer recurrence. The study has shown that CUR as such or combined with FOLFOX resulted in significant reduction in cancer stem cells. Hence, it can cure and decrease the chances of colorectal cancer recurrence. In another study, Patel et al., (2008) found that combining FOLFOX with CUR resulted in marked apoptosis of colorectal cancer cell lines HCT-116 & HT-29 compared to individual therapies. Nautiyal et al., (2011) studied combining CUR with FOLFOX in treating colorectal cancer and found that this combination is highly effective in inhibiting the tumour growth. In this study, CUR significantly enhanced the sensitivity of colorectal cancer towards FOLFOX. Kamat et al., (2007) studied the apoptotic effects of combining CUR with gemcitabine and paclitaxel and found that CUR enhanced the chemotherapeutic anticancer activity in bladder regardless of interferon-α (IFN-α) resistance. In another study, Kunnumakkara et al., (2007) investigated the ability of CUR to sensitize pancreatic cancer to gemcitabine both in vitro and in vivo. The study concluded that CUR and gemcitabine could be used as a treatment regimen against prostatic cancer. CUR-gemcitabine combination was again studied by Kanai et al., (2011). The findings of this study confirmed the safety and feasibility of using this combination for pancreatic cancer treatment. Sreekanth et al., (2011) found that CUR augmented paclitaxel apoptotic activity against cervical cancer cells. The study showed that this combination significantly reduced the tumour incidence and volume compared to individual therapeutic regimens. Whereas Qian et al., (2011) studied the combination of CUR with adriamycin for hepatocellular carcinoma treatment and concluded that this combination resulted in enhancement of adriamycin apoptotic effect. Apart from the chemotherapeutic agents, researchers have studied combining CUR with other natural products such as green tea, taxol, and Beta-phenylethyl isothiocyanate for oral, cervical,
and prostatic carcinogenesis, respectively. These combinations showed promising, effective, and non-toxic treatment outcomes (Reuter et al., 2008).

1.3.4 Clinical studies on CUR as an anticancer agent

Extensive research has shown the tremendous effectiveness of CUR in preventing and treating several types of cancers such as pancreatic, breast, skin, stomach, duodenum and colorectal cancer. Animal studies emphasized the dose dependant anticancer effects of CUR and recently, the clinical benefits of CUR in patients with several types of cancers have been elucidated (Anderson, 2003; Hatcher et al., 2008; Naksuriya et al., 2014; Sharma et al., 2004).

Several clinical studies investigated the toxicity of CUR, for example, Sharma et al., (2001) study included 15 patients with advanced colorectal cancer who consumed a single oral dose of 36-180 mg CUR for a duration of 4 months where the safety of CUR was confirmed. Cheng et al., (2001) studied a higher dose threshold of 500-8000 mg of daily administration of CUR for three months in 24 patients with resected bladder cancer, stomach metaplasia, oral leukoplakia, Bowen’s disease, and cervical intraepithelial neoplasm. This study confirmed the safety of CUR through pharmacokinetic analysis of blood and urine. Moreover, histopathological monthly evaluation was undertaken and in conclusion, they demonstrated the safety, poor absorption, and chemotherapeutic effects of CUR.

Pharmacokinetics studies were performed simultaneously with toxicity studies in a phase I clinical trial for oral CUR aimed at establishing the toxicity and systemic effects of CUR (Sharma et al., 2004). The pilot study included 15 patients with colorectal cancer and analysed three biomarker activity: glutathione S-transferases (GST), levels of deoxyguanosine adduct (M1G), and inducible prostaglandin E2 (PGE2)
as a reflection of CUR effects on carcinogenesis. The study concludes that CUR is effective in preventing and treating colorectal cancer however, low systemic bioavailability restricts its effectiveness. These results are in consistence with another phase I trials that investigated the pharmacokinetics and chemotherapeutic effects of CUR in twelve patients where the findings emphasized the anticancer effects of CUR despite its poor bioavailability (Anderson, 2003). The efficiency of CUR in the prevention of colorectal cancer was studied by Carroll et al.,(2011) with 44 participants who met the criteria; smokers, older than 40 years old, and has 8 or more rectal aberrant crypt foci (ACF) were included. Oral CUR was administered for 30 days and researchers assessed the chemoprevention ability of CUR through analyses of prostaglandin PGE2 and 5-hydroxyeicosatetraenoic acid (5-HETE) within the ACF. In consistence with the findings of Dhillon et al.,(2008), this study showed that CUR was poorly absorbed yet managed to reduce the ACF number that demonstrates its effectiveness in the prophylaxis against colorectal cancer.

In conclusion, in vitro, in vivo, and clinical studies suggest that CUR is potent against several types of cancer, including colorectal cancer, which is the subject of the present investigation. However, its effectiveness is restricted due to its poor systemic absorption and low bioavailability. In order to realise the anticancer potential of CUR, some form of formulation intervention is required. In the next chapter, I shall review current trends in formulation technology that address the constraints associated with the effectiveness of CUR and relevant to the present investigation.

1.4 Nanomedicine

Nanotechnology has invaded the contemporary industries and is usually referred to the design, fabrication, and utilization of materials with nanoscale
dimensions (Liu et al., 2007; Park et al., 2008). In the late 1990s, innovative technology has merged medicine in nanotechnology in a new term called nanomedicine (Wagner et al., 2006). Unfortunately, there is no international definition for nanomedicine. The European Science Foundation (ESF) defined nanomedicine as “the science and technology of diagnosing, treating, and preventing disease and traumatic injury, of relieving pain, and of preventing and improving human health, using molecular tools and molecular knowledge of the human body” (Webster, 2006). Whereas the United States’ National Institute of Health Roadmap for Medical Research in Nanomedicine (NIH) defines nanomedicine as “an offshoot of nanotechnology which refers to highly specific medical interventions at the molecular scale for curing disease or repairing damaged tissues, such as bone, muscle, or nerve” (Webster, 2006). Nanomedicine ramifies into several types of nano-devices including nanomachines, nanofibers, nanosensors, and NPs (nanocarriers) (Park et al., 2008).

Research has been extensively studying the application of nanocarriers in various medical applications due to the long list of advantages over conventional medicine. Physical properties of nanocarriers such as particle size, size distribution, surface charge, and surface modification flexibility allows targeted delivery of the cargo (Kumari et al., 2010). Nanocarriers have unique characterization that may be exploited for improved pharmacokinetic properties of drugs compared to traditional medicine (Bhaskar et al., 2010). In addition, nanocarriers have the advantage of releasing drugs in sustained and controlled manners (Malam et al., 2009).

Implicating nanocarriers in drug delivery has several advantages including improved solubility of cargo, inhibition of systemic clearance, enhancing drug stability (Liu et al., 2007), drug delivery across the blood brain barrier (BBB) and blood-cochlear barrier (Bhaskar et al., 2010), reduction in toxicity and hence dosage regiment
whilst at the same time enhancing drug efficacy (Malam et al., 2009). Nanomedicine has been applied in different healthcare sectors such as in vivo imaging, in vitro diagnostics, biomaterials, active implants, drug nanoformulations, and drug delivery (Wagner et al., 2006). Functional pharmaceutical nanocarriers have been used in dentistry, ophthalmology, pulmonary, cardiology, and neurology, to name few (Farokhzad & Langer, 2006). Drug release can be tailored in response to various triggers including pH, temperature and environment or changes in concentration of an analyte or enzyme such as glucose, glutathione, matrix metalloproteinases (Farokhzad & Langer, 2006; Mura et al., 2013; Torchilin, 2012).

Conventional chemotherapeutic drugs are associated with debilitating drawbacks such as severe toxicity to normal cells, instability, lack of selectivity, and drug resistance (Liu et al., 2007; Park et al., 2008; Shapira et al., 2011). Therefore, researchers have extensively studied therapeutic alternatives that manifest fewer side effects. Cancer tissues have unique pathophysiology in which tumours have fenestrated vasculature that is dilated and poorly differentiated with high interstitial pressure and poor lymphatic drainage (Liu et al., 2007; Vlerken et al., 2007). Taking advantage of this pathophysiology, nanocarriers can be administered for site-specific delivery into tumour tissue where they may accumulate passively or actively. Furthermore, nanocarriers can be tailored to enhance the cytotoxicity of chemotherapeutic agents, whilst reducing side effects and overcoming drug resistance (Park et al., 2008; Shapira et al., 2011; Vlerken et al., 2007).

Nanocarriers can be administered via various routes such as non-invasive (intranasal, pulmonary, oral and transdermal delivery) (Sosnik & Sarmento, 2014) as well as invasive routes (Intravascular, subcutaneous, intravenous delivery) (Cheng et al., 2008).
1.4.1 Challenges in Nanomedicine

The application of nanotechnology in medicine is continuously evolving and is seen as a promising approach towards a wide variety of medical applications, such as diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of diseases (Kranz et al., 2011; Linkov et al., 2008). However, there are several challenges associated with nanomedicine.

The most challenging obstacle in nanomedicine is related to the physico-chemical characterization of the nanocarriers so that batch-to-batch variability is not easily achieved. Furthermore, the physico-chemical properties of the nanocarriers can become altered as these delivery systems interact with the biological fluids or environmental conditions during storage (Wicki et al., 2015). In addition, the health risks and environmental side effects associated with nanomedicine development and manufacturing processes have not been assessed (Baun & Hansen, 2008; Linkov et al., 2008; Wicki et al., 2015). There are no regulatory or internationally agreed guidelines governing the production and usage of this class of dosage forms (Wicki et al., 2015).

Despite the potential and appealing features associated with nanomedicine in cancer diagnosis, treatment, and prevention, research is still constrained by complexity and heterogeneity of tumours among patients (Prabhakar et al., 2013; Shi et al., 2016). There is also the difficulty of targeting nanocarriers to solid tumours (Nie, 2010; Shi et al., 2016). Biological factors such as NPs-protein interaction, blood circulation and extravasation into tumours, possess negative influence in the permeability of nanocarriers into the tumour, hence its therapeutic efficacy (Shi et al., 2016). Moreover, the majority of the available data about the therapeutic effects of NPs are based on in vitro and in vivo studies.
1.4.2 Types of “nanocarriers”

NPs used in drug delivery systems are submicron-sized systems or devices that include polymeric NPs, micelles, dendrimers, liposomes, and solid lipid nanoparticles (SLN) where each system has unique physico-chemical properties.

1.4.2.1 Polymeric nanoparticles

Polymeric NPs (Figure 1.6) are particles with size below 1 µm fabricated usually from biodegradable polymers (Hans & Lowman, 2002). They may consist of two or more polymer chains with different hydrophobicity called copolymers that self-assemble in a core-shell structure in an aqueous environment (Muller et al., 2000). Drugs may be conjugated to the side chain of the linear polymers and through manipulating the ratios of the forming polymers, we can control the degradation rate of the NPs and hence, drug release (Cho et al., 2008). Polymers used can be either natural such as albumin, alginate, CS, and collagen or synthetic such as polyarcylates, polycaprolactones, and polylactide-polyglycoid (Panyam & Labhasetwar, 2003; Soppimath et al., 2001; Cho et al., 2008). Natural polymers are less preferred because of the variety in purity and degree of crosslinking that might affect the functionality of the delivery (Hans & Lowman, 2002).
Several methods are used in the production of polymeric NPs such as solvent diffusion, solvent evaporating, solvent displacement, interfacial deposition, nanoprecipitation, multiple emulsion, salting out, polymerization, and ionic gelation (Hans & Lowman, 2002; Soppimath et al., 2001). According to the method of preparation, the embedded drug is either covalently bounded to or physically encapsulated in the polymer matrix (Cho et al., 2008). Polymeric NPs can be structured either in nanocapsule or nanosphere form, where the former consists of a liquid or semi-solid core immersed in a solid shell, the latter is completely solid matrix (Vauthier & Bouchemail, 2009).

Polymeric NPs may be biodegradable, biocompatible (Hans & Lowman, 2002), flexible, and stable delivery systems that are capable of embedding a wide range of therapeutic agents with high loading capacity (Patel et al., 2012). In addition, they protect the embedded agent and release it in controlled and sustained manner (Soppimath et al., 2001). Moreover, many polymers used in the fabrication of
polymeric NPs have been safely used in humans for decades (Cho et al., 2008; Sanna et al., 2014).

Several polymeric NPs are under preclinical and clinical studies. For example, Paclitaxel-incorporating PEG-modified polyaspartate polymeric micelles (NK105) is in phase I clinical studies, whereas paclitaxel containing Monomethoxy polyethylene glycol-d,l-lactide polymeric micelles (Genexol-PM®), Doxorubicin-incorporated PEG-polyaspartic acid polymeric micelles (NK911), cyclodextrin-poly(ethylene glycol) copolymer conjugated to camptothecin (CRLX101), and Cisplatin-incorporating polyethylene glycol poly(glutamic acid) polymeric micelles (NC-6004) are in phase II clinical studies (Sanna et al., 2014; Chan et al., 2010; Cho et al., 2008).

Two polymeric NPs are currently available in market, namely, Aboscan® a dextran-fabricated NPs using iron oxide for the diagnostic imaging of the spleen and liver, and Abraxane® an albumin-fabricated NPs using paclitaxel for breast cancer treatment (Patel et al., 2012).

1.4.2.2 Micelles

Introduced in early 1990s, polymeric micelles are a mesoscopic drug delivery system with a unique core-shell structure (Figure 1.7). The hydrophobic part of the copolymer self-assemble into the inner core which embed the hydrophobic drug, whereas the hydrophilic part forms the water shell protecting the encapsulated hydrophobic drug from the aqueous environment (Kedar et al., 2010). Polymeric micelles can be formed either by a single polymer-drug conjugation or through complexation of two oppositely charged poly-ions (Kataoka et al., 2012). The small particle size (<100 nm) of the polymeric micelles gives the resemblance of natural
carriers such as viruses, hence they cannot be recognized *in vivo* by the reticuloendothelial system (Lavasanifar *et al*., 2002).

![Figure 1.7 Polymeric Micelles (Adopted and modified from www.sigmaaldrich.com)](image)

Polymeric micelles can be fabricated by di-block copolymers, tri-block copolymers, or graft copolymers. The selection of the copolymer depends on the intended application of the micelles formation. Some polymers are suited for controlled drug release, prolong systemic circulation time, or introduction of targeting moieties (Kedar *et al*., 2010). The main driving force for polymeric micelles formation is the core segregation from the aqueous environment and it starts upon reaching the threshold concentration called critical micelle concentration (CMC). Micelles with lower CMC values are more stable and have lower rate of dissociation thus, more drug would be available at the target site (Kataoka *et al*., 2012; Kedar *et al*., 2010). Formulation of polymeric micelles is achieved in two steps: synthesis of the block copolymer and then conversion into micelles (Kedar *et al*., 2010). Micelles can also be formed through electrostatic interactions, metal complexation, hydrophobic interactions, and hydrogen bonding (Kataoka *et al*., 2012; Kedar *et al*., 2010). Methods of micellization are
dialysis, self-emulsion evaporation, microsphere separation, oil-in-water emulsion, and rapid heating methods (Kedar et al., 2010).

Compared to amphiphilic micelles, polymeric micelles have lower CMC values (Gaucher et al., 2005). The major obstacle in the manufacture of polymeric micelles is the temporal control. Temporal control means that a slight deviation in the environment temperature from the lower critical solution temperature (LCST) results in micelle degradation, hence immature drug release occurs. Therefore, local modification of patient body temperature is required (Matsumura, 2008).

In vitro studies on polymeric micelles incorporating anticancer agents have shown promising findings. Therefore, several anticancer agents-loaded with micelles are under clinical investigations. Paclitaxel loaded micelles, NK105, is under Phase I/II studies for the determination of the recommended dose, maximum tolerated dose, dose-limiting toxicity, and pharmacokinetics in several cancers (Matsumura, 2008; Matsumura & Kataoka, 2009). Cisplatin-loaded micelles, NC-6004, is under phase II studies designed to determine the toxicity (Matsumura, 2008; Matsumura & Kataoka, 2009). NK102, SN-38 encapsulated micelles is under Phase II studies. The study will be continued until disease progression or inadmissible toxicity occurs (Matsumura, 2008; Matsumura & Kataoka, 2009). NK911, doxorubicin-incorporated micelles is under phase II clinical trials against metastatic pancreatic cancer whereas, Epirubicin-loaded micelles, (NC-6300), is under phase I study to determine the safety and efficacy of dose against advanced solid tumours (Cabrala & Kataoka, 2014).

1.4.2.3 Dendrimers

First proposed in late 1970’s as a monodispersed and structure-controlled system, dendrimers (Figure 1.8), have a unique well-defined, highly branched and
globular polymer architecture formulated in three-dimensional molecular arrangement (Emanuele & Attwood, 2005; Esfand & Tomalia, 2001; Gillies & Fréchet, 2005; Kurtoglu et al., 2009; Liu & Fréchet, 1999; Zhang et al., 2008). Compared to conventional polymers, dendrimers are globular in shape, have more controlled structure and molecular weight, and a wider functional surfaces (Emanuele & Attwood, 2005; Liu & Fréchet, 1999). The unique globular structure comprises of a core (zero generation) and multiple layers of repeated units called generations; where low generations represent an open structures, and higher generations are more globular and dense, therefore, a plethora of dendrimers architectures have been fabricated (Emanuele & Attwood, 2005; Liu & Fréchet, 1999; Zhang et al., 2008).

![Dendrimers](image)

Figure 1.8 Dendrimers (*Drawn using Microsoft paint®, 1709*)

Two distinct strategies are used for dendrimers synthesis: The divergent and the convergent synthesis. In the former, the dendrimer growth starts from the core followed by a stepwise addition of the outer layers. Whereas in the latter, the growth starts at the chain ends followed by the addition of molecules towards the core (Esfand & Tomalia, 2001; Liu & Fréchet, 1999). Both of the strategies involve two-steps reactions sequence: growth step and activation step. In addition, clean and side reactions-free processes are required in both strategies. Besides the difference in the structural
formation order, convergent strategy incurs better control of the structure, while the divergent strategy is better for large-scale production (Liu & Fréchet, 1999). However, both strategies are tedious and time-consuming. Therefore, new strategies are being proposed such as double stage convergent growth and orthogonal coupling strategies (Liu & Fréchet, 1999). In nanomedicine, several types of dendrimers have been used including polyamidoamines (PAMAM), polyesters (PGLSA-OH), and polyproplimines (PPI), among others (Mignani et al., 2013).

Drugs can be encapsulated in dendrimers via numerous interactions such as electrostatic, hydrophobic, hydrogen bond, and covalent interactions (Emanuele & Attwood, 2005). Dendrimers can be designed to have therapeutic targeted propensities, where disease specific-signals such as oxidative, chemical and environmental changes serve as a trigger for the cleavage between dendrimers linkers and thus, drug release (Mignani et al., 2013). Dendrimers have been used in various applications including enzyme mimicking, gene and drug delivery, diagnostic agents, immunodiagnistics, vaccines, antivirals, antibacterial, and anticancer therapeutics (Emanuele & Attwood, 2005; Esfand & Tomalia, 2001; Gillies & Fréchet, 2005; Liu & Fréchet, 1999).

Dendrimers have several advantages related to their unique structure such as uniformity, controlled size, low polydispersity, flexible surface group (Patri et al., 2005). Furthermore, they may overcome biological constraints that hinder targeting to tumour site (Mignani et al., 2013). Moreover, these delivery systems expedite passive targeting of drugs to the solid tumours (Gillies & Fréchet, 2005). The manufacture of dendrimers is expensive and raises toxicity and biocompatibility concerns. Furthermore, dendrimers have poor biodistribution, which shortens their blood circulation time and hence, less therapeutic efficacy is achieved (Liu & Fréchet, 1999).
Notwithstanding, there are a number of dendrimers currently in preclinical development such as folic acid-PAMAM dendrimers, poly propyleneimine dendrimers, ligand- conjugated PEG-poly-L-lysine dendrimers, and poly (glycerol-succinic acid) dendrimers for epithelia cancer, HIV, malaria, and various cancer treatments, respectively. Poly-L-lysine dendrimer (VivaGel®) is under phase I clinical studies for antimicrobial protection from HIV and genital herpes infections (Zhang et al., 2008).

1.4.2.4 Liposomes

Liposomes (Figure 1.9) are mesoscopic colloidal particles that can be prepared from synthetic or natural phospholipid layers embracing aqueous compartments (Lian & Ho, 2001; Mezei & Gulasekharam, 1980; Sharma & Sharma, 1997). Liposomes were first introduced in 1970 as drug delivery systems for targeted drug delivery and enhancing the therapeutic indices of drugs (Gregoriadis & Florence, 1993; Lian & Ho, 2001). The structure versatility of liposomes allows the encapsulation of a wide range of drugs with variable lipophilicities (Gregoriadis & Florence, 1993; Sharma & Sharma, 1997). The gel-liquid crystalline transition temperature (Tc) of phospholipids determines the degree of fluidity of the liposomal membrane at ambient temperature (Gregoriadis & Florence, 1993).

![Liposomes](image)

Figure 1.9 Liposomes (adopted and modified from www.intechopen.com)
Liposomes are mainly composed of neutral charge phosphatidylcholine with fatty acid chains of various lengths and degree of saturation. To a lesser extent, cholesterol is included in the lipid formulation (Gregoriadis & Florence, 1993; Malam et al., 2009). The simplest method of liposomes formulation is the thin-film hydration method. However, it produces liposomes with low encapsulation efficiency (EE%). Therefore, the freeze-drying preformed liposome dispersion method was developed (Sharma & Sharma, 1997). Based on the liposomes composition and intracellular delivery mechanisms, liposomes are classified into five types: i) conventional liposomes, ii) cationic liposomes, iii) long circulating liposomes, iv) pH-sensitive liposomes, and v) immunoliposomes (Sharma & Sharma, 1997).

Another classification of liposomes is based on the liposomes-biological interactions into: non-interactive sterically stabilized liposomes (LCL) and highly interactive cationic liposomes. While the former has longer circulation half-life, the later has higher affinity to cell membranes, thus, suitable for intracellular genetic material delivery (Sharma & Sharma, 1997).

Liposomal physical properties such as lipid composition, size, charge, membrane fluidity, steric hindrance, charge density, and permeability defines liposomal-biological interactions, which in turn determine the drug intracellular activity (Lian & Ho, 2001; Sharma & Sharma, 1997). Liposomes can be administered orally or parenterally (subcutaneously, intramuscularly, intravenously) (Lian & Ho, 2001; Mezei & Gulasekharam, 1980) and they can be used in a wide range of applications such as diagnostic imaging, oral drug therapy (Sharma & Sharma, 1997), gene therapy (Lian & Ho, 2001), vaccination, and antimicrobial and antineoplastic therapy (Gregoriadis & Florence, 1993). They are biodegradable and have physical and structural similarities to biological membranes. They may be used to enhance the pharmacologic properties
of drugs (Gregoriadis & Florence, 1993). Compared to the crude drug in aqueous solution, liposomal encapsulation enhances drug absorption and biodistribution (Lian & Ho, 2001). However, the therapeutic applications of liposomes are limited due to their batch to batch variability, constraints in sterilization, low EE% and rapid clearance from systemic circulation (Allen & Cullis, 2013; Lian & Ho, 2001; Sharma & Sharma, 1997).

Table 1.2 shows liposome-based products approved for human use, whereas Table 1.3 lists liposome-based products in clinical trials (Allen & Cullis, 2013; Evaluate, 2017; FDA, 2018; Lian & Ho, 2001; Saif, 2014; Sharma & Sharma, 1997; Tak et al., 2018).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Indication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abelect™</td>
<td>Amphotericin B</td>
<td>Serious fungal infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambisome™</td>
<td>Amphotericin B</td>
<td>Serious fungal infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphocil™</td>
<td>Amphotericin B</td>
<td>Serious fungal infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphotec™</td>
<td>Amphotericin B</td>
<td>Serious fungal infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPX-351</td>
<td>Cytarabine; Daunorubicin</td>
<td>Acute myeloid leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DaunoXome™</td>
<td>Daunorubicin citrate</td>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma in AIDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DepoDur™</td>
<td>Morphine sulphate</td>
<td>Pain after surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DepoCyt™</td>
<td>Cytosine</td>
<td>Lymphomatous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diprivan™</td>
<td>Propofol</td>
<td>Anesthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doxil™</td>
<td>Doxorubicin</td>
<td>- Kaposi sarcoma in AIDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caelyx™</td>
<td></td>
<td>- Refractory ovarian cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estrasorb™</td>
<td>Estrogen</td>
<td>Menopausal therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exparel™</td>
<td>Bupivacaine</td>
<td>Local anaesthetic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myocet™</td>
<td>Doxorubicin</td>
<td>Breast cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visudyne™</td>
<td>Verteporphin</td>
<td>Wet macular degeneration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 1.3 Liposome-based products in clinical trials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Indication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allovectin-7</td>
<td>HLA-B7, Plasmid</td>
<td>Phase II</td>
<td>Gene therapy for metastatic cancers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alocrest</td>
<td>Vinorelbine</td>
<td>Phase I</td>
<td>Newly diagnosed or relapsed solid tumours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antragen™</td>
<td>Tretinoin</td>
<td>Phase II/III</td>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma in AIDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brakiva</td>
<td>Topotecan</td>
<td>Phase I</td>
<td>Relapsed solid tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPX-1</td>
<td>Irinotecan HCl: Floxuridine</td>
<td>Phase II</td>
<td>Colorectal cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endo-Tag-1</td>
<td>Paclitaxil</td>
<td>Phase II</td>
<td>Pancreatic cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nyotran™</td>
<td>Nystatin</td>
<td>Phase II/III</td>
<td>Candidemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventus™</td>
<td>Prostaglandin E1</td>
<td>Phase III</td>
<td>Acute respiratory distress syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MBP-436</td>
<td>Oxaliplatin</td>
<td>Phase II</td>
<td>Gastric cancer and gastro-esophageal junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM-302</td>
<td>Doxorubicin</td>
<td>Phase I</td>
<td>Breast cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM-398</td>
<td>CPT-11</td>
<td>Phase III</td>
<td>Gastric and pancreatic cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ThermoDox</td>
<td>Doxorubicin</td>
<td>Phase III</td>
<td>Refractory chest wall breast cancer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.4.2.5 Solid Lipid Nanoparticles (SLN)

SLN (Figure 1.10) were first proposed in 1991 as alternative drug delivery systems to conventional carriers such as liquid oils, liposomes, and emulsions (Mehnert & Mader, 2001; Muller et al., 2000; Müller et al., 2002). SLN are particles in the nano-size range with a solid-lipid matrix and are made from solid lipids and stabilized by surfactants (Wissing et al., 2004). The solid state of the lipids reduces the mobility of
the embedded drugs which hinders the drug release (Mehnert & Mader, 2001; Muhlen et al., 1998).

![SLN structure](image)

Figure 1.10 SLN (*Drawn using Microsoft Paint® 1709*)

SLN are prepared using any of the following techniques: i) high shear homogenization which is sub-divided into hot and cold homogenization methods for heat sensitive and highly heat sensitive drugs, respectively ii) microemulsion iii) solvent emulsification-diffusion or –evaporation iv) double emulsion, and v) high speed sonication/ stirring (Blasi et al., 2007; Mukherjee et al., 2009; Muller et al., 2000).

Drugs can be embedded between lipid layers, the fatty acid chains, or in imperfections within the lipid matrix (Wissing et al., 2004). Based on the drug incorporation location, 3 models can be recognised: solid solution model, core-shell model which could be either drug-enriched shell or drug-enriched core model (Muller et al., 2000). The stability and release of incorporated drugs depend mainly on the physical characteristics of the SLN (particle size, zeta potential, crystallinity), (Muller et al., 2000). SLN can be administered via various routes including oral, transdermal, ocular, rectal, pulmonary and parenteral routes (Mukherjee et al., 2009; Muller et al., 2000; Wissing et al., 2004). However, toxicity profiles following parenteral route are not available yet (Muller et al., 2000).
Various drugs have been incorporated in SLN such as cortisone, diazepam, menadione, methasone, valeraten, prednisolone, retinol, timolol, to mention few (Mehnert & Mader, 2001). They are physically stable, may manifest controlled release kinetics, and have superior tolerability (Wissing et al., 2004). Compared to conventional drug delivery systems, SLN may be non-toxic and can be formulated without the need for organic solvents. In addition, they can be easily sterilized (Mehnert & Mader, 2001; Schwarz et al., 1994).

1.4.3 Methods of preparation for polymeric nanoparticles

Polymeric NPs have been extensively studied as a drug delivery system for small and large molecules. Therefore, several preparation methods have been proposed (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Rao & Geckeler, 2011). Essentially, the preparation techniques include two main steps. The first step comprises the preparation of the emulsified system, whereas the NPs are fabricated in the second step. Classification of the preparation method depends on the first step, which could be either polymerization of monomers or dispersion of a preformed polymer (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009; Pinto Reis et al., 2006; Rao & Geckeler, 2011). Method selection depends on several factors including physico-chemical characteristics of the target drug, required physico-chemical parameters of the NPs, target site, application, among others (Pinto Reis et al., 2006; Rao & Geckeler, 2011). Figure 1.11 illustrates the different types of preparation methods.
Figure 1.11 Illustration of preparation methods for polymeric nanoparticles

* SCF: Supercritical fluid technology
* C/LRP: Controlled/Living Radical Polymerization
1.4.3.1 Preparation methods from dispersion of preformed polymer

Different methods may be used to successfully formulate NPs by dispersion of preformed polymers. These methods are reviewed in the following sections.

1.4.3.1.1 Solvent Evaporation

Solvent evaporation was the first developed method for polymeric NPs preparation from preformed polymers (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009). In the first step, the emulsion is prepared by dissolving the polymer in a volatile solvent such as chloroform, dichloromethane, ethyl acetate or acetone via high-speed homogenization or ultra-sonication (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009). The formulated emulsions could be either single-emulsions (w/o) or double-emulsions ((w/o)/w). The NPs are then fabricated by evaporating the solvent of the polymer by diffusion through the continuous phase of the emulsion. This step is achieved by either continuous magnetic stirring at room temperature or increasing the temperature under pressure (Pinto Reis et al., 2006; Rao & Geckeler, 2011). Finally, formulated NPs are collected by ultracentrifugation, washing with purified water, and finally, lyophylization (Kumari et al., 2010; Mohanraj et al., 2006).

The particle size range can be controlled by managing the polymer concentrations, type and concentration of the stabilizer, viscosity of aqueous and organic phases, stirring speed, and temperature (Mohanraj et al., 2006; Pinto Reis et al., 2006). Examples of frequently used polymers are poly(lactide) (PLA), PLGA, poly(epsilon-caprolactone) (PCL), ethylcellulose (EC), cellulose acetate phthalate, among others (Pinto Reis et al., 2006; Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009).

Lee et al., (2006) used solvent evaporation method to prepare polymeric NPs from CS derivatives fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC)- conjugated glycol CSs (FGCs)
using diluted chloroform as the solvent. Fabricated NPs size ranges were 150-500 nm, and were stable in phosphate buffered saline (PBS) for 20 days at 37°C. Gómez-Gaete et al., (2007) encapsulated dexamethasone in PLGA NPs using the solvent evaporation technique for ocular delivery. Particle size and zeta potential produced were 230 nm, -4 mV, respectively. Dexamethasone was completely released after 4 hr at 37°C medium. However, loading capacity was relatively low (2.3%). Although the solvent evaporation method is simple (Rao & Geckeler, 2011), it is time consuming, there is the possibility of stabilizer binding on the surface of the NPs, the likelihood of nanodroplet cohesion during the evaporation step, and the difficulty of scaling-up (Pinto Reis et al., 2006; Rao & Geckeler, 2011; Lee et al., 1999).

1.4.3.1.2 Nanoprecipitation

Nanoprecipitation, also called solvent displacement, was first developed by Fessi et al., (1992). Nanoprecipitation technique has three basic components: i) polymer (synthetic, semi-synthetic, or natural), ii) polymer solvent iii) non-solvent of the polymer (Rao & Geckeler, 2011; Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009). After dissolving the polymer in water-miscible solvent, this organic solution is slowly added to the aqueous phase under slight and continuous stirring, vice versa addition successfully formulate the NPs as well (Thioune et al., 1997; Yordanov & Dushkin, 2010). Subsequently, rapid diffusion of the polymer solution in the non-solvent phase results in the aggregation of the polymer chains and thus, instant formation of the NPs (Rao & Geckeler, 2011; Galindo-rodriguez et al., 2004). Finally, The polymer solvent is removed by evaporation (Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009; Legrand et al., 2007).

Polymers commonly used are PLA, PLGA, Eudragit, cellulose derivatives, among others (Rao & Geckeler, 2011; Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009; Bilati et al., 2005).
Organic solvents used should be miscible in water and easily evaporated such as acetone, tetrahydrofuran (THF), ethanol, mixtures of two or three solvents (Thioune et al., 1997; Yordanov & Dushkin, 2010; Rao & Geckeler, 2011; Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009).

The principle of this method is based on the Marangoni effect, which is related to the interfacial turbulence of the polymer after displacement of the solvent with water (Bilati et al., 2005). This effect results in decreasing the interfacial tension between the two phases, hence, increasing the surface area and finally, NPs formation (Rao & Geckeler, 2011; Govender et al., 2016; Galindo-rodriguez et al., 2004).

The physico-chemical characteristics of the NPs are affected by the diffusion conditions, miscibility of the organic phase, organic phase and aqueous phase ratio, polymer type and concentration, in addition to the surfactant type and concentration, if added (Bilati et al., 2005; Govender et al., 2016; Legrand et al., 2007; Yordanov & Dushkin, 2010).

Nanoprecipitation method is a simple, one-step, easy, fast, reproducible, economic, and well characterized polymers are used (Bilati et al., 2005; Govender et al., 2016; Legrand et al., 2007; Yordanov & Dushkin, 2010). However, water soluble drugs are poorly incorporated (Bilati et al., 2005).

Shen et al., (2011) developed PEG-b-PCL and PEG-b-Poly(acrylic acid) (PAA) NPs incorporated with β-carotene as a model drug. The NPs were successfully developed for biomedical applications, such as imaging and drug delivery. The size range was 50-500 nm with a maximum drug loading capacity of 50%. In another study, Dhar et al., (2008) employed the nanoprecipitation technique to fabricate Pt(IV) prodrug-PLGA–PEG NPs encapsulating cisplatin targeting prostate cancer. The NPs
were formulated to target Prostate Specific-membrane Antigen (PSMA), which is overexpressed in prostate cancer. The particle size and loading efficiency were 140 nm and 6%, respectively. The release kinetics showed sustained release of drug over 80 hr.

1.4.3.1.3 Emulsification/solvent diffusion

Emulsification/solvent diffusion, also called spontaneous emulsification, is a modified technique of the emulsification/solvent evaporation technique (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Miller, 1988). It was first proposed based on using organic solvents, however, it was adapted in the salt-out technique (Pinto Reis et al., 2006). The simplest model of this technique comprises of water, hydrocarbon, and fatty acid or a short-chain alcohol (Miller, 1988). In more advanced versions, 1-3% of mixed emulsifiers can be added (El-Aasser et al., 1988). First, the drug-containing polymer is dissolved in a partially water-miscible solvent. Secondly, the solution is saturated with water to reach initial thermodynamic equilibrium of both phases (Nagavarma et al., 2012). Thirdly, solvent diffusion is promoted by dilution with an excess of water (Bouchemal et al., 2006). Fourthly, the super-saturated solution of oil in water is emulsified in an aqueous solution containing stabilizer which leads to solvent diffusion to the external phase and hence, formation of NPs as an oil droplets in an aqueous continuous phase. Finally, the solvent is expelled by filtration or evaporation (Kwon et al., 2001).

Emulsification occurs in the aqueous phase (Miller, 1988). For successful emulsification, fatty alcohol and ionic surfactant should be thoroughly mixed in the water phase before the addition to the oil phase (El-Aasser et al., 1988). Examples of solvents used are propylene carbonate and benzyl alcohol whereas polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) and gelatine can be used as stabilizers (Kwon et al., 2001). The fatty alcohol chain length should be at least 12 carbons (El-Aasser et al., 1988). Based on the system
composition and their physico-chemical characterization, two mechanisms are proposed for the spontaneous emulsification: nucleation and growth, and diffusion and stranding (Bouchemal et al., 2008).

Unlike the emulsification/solvent evaporation technique, spontaneous emulsification is not caused by interfacial turbulence but by the diffusional process itself (Miller, 1988). The spontaneity of the emulsification process is affected by several factors such as the interfacial and bulk viscosity, interfacial tension, surfactant concentration and structure, and phase transition region. The spontaneity of emulsification in turn, affects the nanoparticle size and size distribution (Bouchemal et al., 2008). Usually, size range produced using this technique is 100-450 nm (El-Aasser et al., 1988; Kwon et al., 2001).

Nanoformulations produced by spontaneous emulsification are known to be stable. Several hypotheses have been proposed to explain their stability. One hypothesis is the formation of a molecular complex at the oil-water interface which decreases the interfacial tension (El-Aasser et al., 1988). Another hypothesis is the formation of a viscous film at the oil-water interface which acts as a steric stress to aggregation (El-Aasser et al., 1988). In addition, it is believed that the formation of aqueous crystals decreases the van der Waals attractive forces hence, support the stability of the nanoformulations. Finally, deterred diffusion of the oil phase to the aqueous phase maintains its stability (El-Aasser et al., 1988).

Examples of drugs encapsulated using this technique are doxorubicin, coumarin, indocyanine, and cyclosporine (Nagavarma et al., 2012). Advantages of spontaneous emulsification are simplicity, reproducibility, ability of scaling-up, high EE%, and narrow size distribution (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Bouchemal et al., 2008).
However, a major drawback is the need to expel high volumes of water in which water-soluble drugs might leak out and hence, decreases the EE% (Nagavarma et al., 2012).

Quintanar-Guerrero et al., (1998) studied the possibility of using spontaneous emulsification technique in fabrication of biodegradable nanocapsules. They used different polymers such as PLA, Eudragit E, and poly (ε-caprolactone). The nanocapsules formulation was confirmed by density gradient centrifugation, the presence of a unique density band, scanning electron microscopy (SEM) and atomic force microscope (AFM) images. Particle size range was 174-346 nm and were stable at least for a month. In a different study, PLGA nanospheres were produced using spontaneous emulsification technique encapsulating water soluble and insoluble agents, 5-flururacil (5-FU) and indomethacin, respectively. Both nanospheres were successfully formulated using acetone as solvent, in contrast, dichloromethane and chloroform failed to produce particles in the submicron size. Particle size ranges were 200-300 nm and 600-800 nm for 5-FU and indomethacin, respectively. The drugs were homogeneously dispersed in the PLGA. 5-FU was poorly encapsulated compared to indomethacin and release kinetics showed burst initial release for both drugs. However, the initial burst release was avoided in the case of indomethacin by increasing the molecular weight of PLGA. Indomethacin release was more sustained for up to 120 hr compared to 50 hr for 5-FU nanospheres (Niwa et al., 1993).

1.4.3.1.4 Salting-out technique

Salting-out technique, also called reverse-emulsification, is essentially a modification in the composition of the emulsion/solvent diffusion technique (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009; Pinto Reis et al., 2006). It is
based on the separation of the water miscible solvent from the aqueous phase through the salting-out effect (Nagavarma et al., 2012).

Basically, a salting-out agent is used in high concentrations to efficiently achieve their effect in the aqueous phase. The selection of the salting-out agent is critical as it plays a major role in the EE% (Nagavarma et al., 2012). Examples of salting-out agents are electrolytes such as aluminium chloride, calcium chloride, magnesium acetate, magnesium chloride, or non-electrolytes such as sucrose (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Pinto Reis et al., 2006; Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009; Ibrahim et al., 1992; Allémann et al., 1992; Astete & Sabliov, 2006). Colloid stabilizers, such as polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP) or hydroxyethylcellulose, are used to improve the stability of the formulated NPs (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009; Pinto Reis et al., 2006). Examples of polymers used in this technique are PLA, PLGA, poly(methacrylic) acid, Eudragit E, and ethyl cellulose (EC) (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Pinto Reis et al., 2006; Astete & Sabliov, 2006; Allémann et al., 1992). The organic phase solvent should be miscible in water, such as acetone and THF (Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009; Astete & Sabliov, 2006). This technique is used to encapsulate lipophilic drugs and they are usually dissolved in the organic phase (Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009).

After dissolving the drug in the organic phase, it is emulsified in an aqueous phase containing high concentrations of the salting-out agent and the colloidal stabilizer (Nagavarma et al., 2012). Subsequently, the oil in water emulsion is diluted with fast addition of excess amount of water until the diffusion of the solvent into the aqueous phase is fulfilled (Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009). The diffusion will induce polymer precipitation in the form of NPs. Finally, the solvent and salting-out agent are expelled either by filtration or centrifugation (Astete & Sabliov, 2006; Ibrahim et al., 1992).
Salting-out technique is low time- and energy-consuming. The major drawback is the need for a purification step during the solvent and salting-out agent elimination process (Astete & Sabliov, 2006).

Kumar et al., (2004) fabricated PLGA NPs using the salting-out technique for DNA delivery. The NPs had particle size and zeta potential of 200 nm and 10 mV, respectively. The NPs successfully encapsulated DNA to be used in the DNA delivery. In another study, Zweers et al., (2004) studied the degradation of polymeric NPs prepared using the salting-out technique. Three types of NPs were formulated, poly(DL-lactic acid) (PDLLA), PLGA, and poly(ethylene oxide)-PLGA diblock copolymer (PEO-PLGA). PEO-PLGA and PLGA NPs degraded within 8 and 10 weeks respectively, whereas PDLLA NPs retained their physico-chemical properties for two years.

1.4.3.2 Preparation methods from dispersion of monomers

1.4.3.2.1 Emulsion polymerization

Emulsion polymerization is one of the fastest NPs preparation techniques (Nagavarma et al., 2012). In the industry, this method is of high interest as it forms NPs with high concentration of the polymer and low viscosity (Manguian et al., 2006). This technique is subdivided into two categories according to the employment of surfactants: i) conventional and ii) surfactant-free emulsion polymerization (Rao & Geckeler, 2011). While the former technique utilizes surfactants for NPs stabilization, the latter uses amphiphilic di-block copolymers. The latter is favoured as it is less toxic, time and cost saving, and manifests better electrosteric stabilization (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Manguian et al., 2006; Rao & Geckeler, 2011).
Essentially, the system comprises of monomers of low water solubility and water. The system might also include water soluble initiator and surfactant as well (Thickett & Gilbert, 2007; Rao & Geckeler, 2011). Colloidal stabilizers can be electrostatic, steric, or polymers (Thickett & Gilbert, 2007).

Generally, this technique has to be processed in acidic conditions to linger the anionic polymerization rate and hence, formulate polymeric NPs instead of polymeric aggregations (Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009). In the conventional technique, monomer is dispersed into an emulsion, whereas in the surfactant-free technique, the monomer is dissolved in an aqueous phase. Afterward, the polymerization is initiated either with an initiator molecule (ion or free radical) or by high-energy radiation (gamma radiator or UV light). Subsequently, chain growth occurs as the monomers collide with each other according to the anionic polymeric mechanism (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Thickett & Gilbert, 2007). Eventually, 100 nm particles containing many polymers are collected by centrifugation (Mohanraj et al., 2006; Rao & Geckeler, 2011). Drug is either dissolved in the polymeric medium or adsorbed onto formed NPs after polymerization (Mohanraj et al., 2006).

Examples of monomers used are styrene, butyl acrylate/styrene, and methyl methacrylate (Rao & Geckeler, 2011).

This technique has been used for the production of a variety of special polymers such as adhesives, binders, construction materials, diagnostic tests, and drug delivery systems (Asua, 2004).

The advantages of this technique include the possibility of producing polymers with special properties and environmentally friendly since water is used as the dispersion medium (Asua, 2004; Thickett & Gilbert, 2007). However, efficient
production requires accurate online control and delicate understanding of the polymerization process, difficulty in preparing monodispersed and controlled particle size batches. Furthermore, efficient methods are required for residual monomers and surfactants discarding (Thickett & Gilbert, 2007; Asua, 2004; Rao & Geckeler, 2011).

1.4.3.2.2 Interfacial Polymerization

Interfacial polymerization is one of the well-established methods for polymeric NPs preparations (Nagavarma et al., 2012; Rao & Geckeler, 2011). It is considered a low-energy emulsification method (Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009).

Both positively and negatively charged surfactants can be used either in the aqueous or organic phase (Dallas et al., 2007). Lipophilic drugs are encapsulated with high EE% using interfacial polymerization such as calcitonin, darodipine, octreotide, and insulin (Vauthier & Bouchemal, 2009; Pinto Reis et al., 2006). Physico-chemical characterization of the formulated polymers depends on the reaction conditions (Dallas et al., 2007). Fabricated NPs using this technique have hollow polymer morphology (Rao & Geckeler, 2011).

Advantages of this technique are reproducibility, high loading efficiencies, the ability to increase NPs concentration at final stages of the process, in situ formation of the polymers, narrow size distribution, and homogeneous dispersions (Dallas et al., 2007; Fessi et al., 1989). However, drawbacks of this technique include the need to use organic solvents and tedium (Reis et al., 2006).

Kuo & Wen, (2008) used interfacial polymerization technique for polyaniline o/w NPs formation from aniline monomers. Monodispersed spherical particles with a size range of 5-15 nm were produced.
1.4.3.3 Ionic Gelation

Ionic gelation technique, also called ionotropic gelation or coacervation, is one of the few organic solvent-free techniques used in polymeric nanoparticle fabrication as its processed in entirely aqueous media (Nagavarma et al., 2012). In this technique, polymeric NPs are fabricated using biodegradable hydrophilic polymers based on electrostatic interactions between oppositely charged polymer moieties with the cross-linking agent to form hydrogels (Mohanraj et al., 2006; Patil et al., 2010).

Ionic gelation technique includes the drop-wise addition of two dilute aqueous phases, the polymer and the cross-linking agent (Nagavarma et al., 2012; de Pinho Neves et al., 2014). Inter- and intra- electrostatic linkages created between the oppositely charged groups form spherical coacervates in the submicron size range (Patil et al., 2010). Eventually, the liquid transforms into hydrogel beads comprising of NPs (Fan et al., 2012).

Physico-chemical characteristics of the NPs varies according to the polymer and cross-linking agent concentrations, as well as the ionic gelation conditions (Vauthier & Bouchemail, 2009). Alginate, carboxymethylcellulose (CBMC), CS, and gellan gum are examples of polymers used in this technique (Patil et al., 2010).

Ionic gelation technique possesses a long list of advantages such as the spontaneity in formation of NPs under mild conditions, non-toxicity, low-cost, non-requirement of organic solvents, simplicity, convenience, speed, and amenability (de Pinho Neves et al., 2014; Fan et al., 2012). On the other hand, NPs formed are of poor mechanical strength, which limits their applications in drug delivery (Agnihotri et al., 2004).
Ionic gelation technique has been widely applied in the formulation of NPs for the delivery of insulin (Avadi et al., 2010; Sadeghi et al., 2008), proteins (Calvo & Remunan-Lopez, 1997), DNA and RNA (Katas & Alpar, 2006), cyclodextrin (Sajeesh & Sharma, 2006), and CUR (Chuah et al., 2011).

1.4.4 Nanomedicine in clinical practice

Worldwide, over 207 companies have devoted their business share towards nanomedicine activities. In fact, amongst the variety of drug delivery systems, nanomedicine accounts for more than 70% of the market share (Wang et al., 2012). Despite the various challenges in nanomedicine, few first generation formulations have shed lights to the market. The most widely used nanotechnology products is colloidal gold in vitro diagnosis, which is used as a rapid test kit for HIV, ovulation, and pregnancy test (Wagner et al., 2006). Nanomedicine for cancer diagnosis, imaging, and treatment has gained intense interest. Some products are already in use while others are showing promising outcomes in clinical studies (Shi et al., 2016).

Tables 1.4 and 1.5 represent examples of nanomedicine products on the market and in clinical development, respectively (Kalepu & Nekkanti, 2015; Kudo et al., 2016; Shi et al., 2016; Von Hoff et al., 2016; Wagner et al., 2016; Wang et al., 2012; Zhao et al., 2017)

Table 1.4 Selected nanomedicine products available in market

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug Name</th>
<th>Composition</th>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>Type of nanomedicine</th>
<th>Manufacturer’s name, county</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abelcet</td>
<td>Amphotericin B</td>
<td>Fungal infections</td>
<td>Liposomes</td>
<td>Enzon, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abraxane</td>
<td>Paclitaxel</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Polymeric NPs</td>
<td>Celgene, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product</td>
<td>Compound</td>
<td>Disease/Condition</td>
<td>Delivery System</td>
<td>Manufacturer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambisome</td>
<td>Amphotericin B</td>
<td>Fungal infections</td>
<td>Liposomes</td>
<td>Gilead, USA. Fujisawa, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphotec</td>
<td>Amphotericin B</td>
<td>Fungal infections</td>
<td>Liposomes</td>
<td>InterMune, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DaunoXome</td>
<td>Daunorubicin</td>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma</td>
<td>Liposomes</td>
<td>Gilead, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doxil</td>
<td>Doxorubicin</td>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma</td>
<td>Liposomes</td>
<td>Ortho Biotech, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depocyt</td>
<td>Cytarabine</td>
<td>Cancer</td>
<td>Liposomes</td>
<td>SkyePharma, London</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EpaXal</td>
<td>Hepatitis vaccine</td>
<td>Hepatitis A</td>
<td>Polymeric NPs</td>
<td>Berna Biotech, Switzerland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feridex</td>
<td>Iron oxide NPs</td>
<td>Liver/ spleen lesion imaging</td>
<td>Polymeric NPs</td>
<td>Berlex, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>coated with dextran</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genexol-PM</td>
<td>Paclitaxil</td>
<td>Breast cancer</td>
<td>Micelles</td>
<td>Samyang, Korea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflexal</td>
<td>Virosomal influenza vaccine</td>
<td>Influenza</td>
<td>Liposomes</td>
<td>Berna Biotech, Switzerland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berna</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marqibo</td>
<td>Vincristine sulphate</td>
<td>Post-gemcitabine metastatic pancreatic cancer</td>
<td>Liposomes</td>
<td>Talon therapeutics, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myocet</td>
<td>Doxorubicin</td>
<td>Breast cancer</td>
<td>Liposomes</td>
<td>Zeneus pharma, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oncaspar</td>
<td>PEGylated asparaginase</td>
<td>Acute lymphoblastic leukemia</td>
<td>Polymeric NPs</td>
<td>Enzon, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onivyde</td>
<td>Irinotecan</td>
<td>Pancreatic cancer</td>
<td>Liposomes</td>
<td>Baxalta innovations, Austria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug Name</td>
<td>Composition</td>
<td>Indication</td>
<td>Type of nanomedicine</td>
<td>Status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resovist</td>
<td>Iron oxide NPs</td>
<td>Liver/ spleen lesion imaging</td>
<td>Polymeric NPs</td>
<td>Bayer Schering Pharma, Germany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMANCS</td>
<td>Neocarzinostatin</td>
<td>Liver and renal cancer</td>
<td>Nanoconjugates</td>
<td>Pola pharma, Korea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panzem</td>
<td>2-methoxyestradiol</td>
<td>Glioblastoma</td>
<td>Nanocrystals</td>
<td>CASI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pharmaceuticals, USA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.5 Selected nanomedicine products in clinical development
1.4.5 Nanoformulations of CUR

CUR has been shown to possess promising therapeutic activities against a plethora of health conditions. Moreover, CUR has gained special interest due its low toxicity even at high therapeutic concentrations. Particularly, CUR is the subject of extensive interest as a chemopreventive and chemotherapeutic agent (Yallapu et al., 2010). However, its therapeutic effectiveness is restrained due to its low oral bioavailability, poor pharmacokinetics, poor aqueous solubility, extensive intestinal and hepatic metabolism, and rapid elimination (Cheng et al., 2013; Shaikh et al., 2009; Yallapu et al., 2010; Yen et al., 2010).

To overcome these limitations and to enhance its therapeutic effects, research has been devoted toward encapsulating CUR in various delivery systems such as liposomes, SLN, micelles, and polymeric NPs (Gupta et al., 2009; Yallapu et al., 2010; Yen et al., 2010). Moreover, CUR nanoformulations are known to prolong the circulation time in the body, manifest sustained release, allow targeted delivery, and help to linger its half-life (Cheng et al., 2013).

Yallapu et al., (2010) fabricated CUR-PLGA NPs conjugated with monoclonal antibodies specific for cisplatin-resistant ovarian cancer treatment. Steady and prolonged release of CUR was achieved. Pre-treatment with CUR enhanced the in vitro sensitivity on ovarian cancer cells toward cisplatin. Therefore, decreased dose of cisplatin and radiation was required for ovarian cancer treatment. In another study, Gupta et al., (2009) encapsulated CUR in silk fibroin and CS NPs for cancer treatment.
*In vitro* studies demonstrated enhanced cellular uptake and efficiency of CUR against MCF-7 and MDA-MB-453 breast cancer cells for eight days. However, a slight loss of CUR occurred during the NPs preparation process. Kim *et al.*, (2011) aimed to enhance the water solubility and bioavailability of CUR by encapsulating it in albumin NPs. It was believed that this would improve its anticancer activity. Fabricated NPs were in the size range of 130-150 nm. Water solubility was enhanced by 300-folds compared to pure CUR. Moreover, on-shelf stability was enhanced and hence, its biological effectiveness was not affected. The biological distribution was enhanced and elimination rates were reduced in mice administered with CUR NPs compared to pure CUR. In terms of its anticancer activity, *in vivo* studies demonstrated that tumour growth was significantly suppressed in CUR NPs administered mice compared to those received pure CUR.

Table 1.6 and Table 1.7 summarize available CUR nanoformulations on market (Yallapu *et al.*, 2012) and CUR nanoformulations under clinical development (Conlan *et al.*, 2017; Kocher *et al.*, 2015; Schiborr *et al.*, 2014; Storka *et al.*, 2015; Yallapu *et al.*, 2015), respectively.

**Table 1.6 List of CUR nanoformulations available on market**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trade name</th>
<th>Ingredients, formulation</th>
<th>Manufacturer’s name and country</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Curcumín C3 complex®vegetarian capsules</td>
<td>Curcumin C3 complex, curcuminoids and <em>piper nigrum</em> fruit extract.</td>
<td>BesVite Inc, USA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CurcuPlus D Ultra™</td>
<td>CUR, ascorbyl palmitate, microcrystalline cellulose, maltodextrin, silicon dioxide, soy lecithin, and stearic acid</td>
<td>Advanced Orthomolecular research Inc., Canada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enhansa</td>
<td>A special CUR compound</td>
<td>Lee sislby compounding pharmacy, USA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study title</td>
<td>Therapeutic indication</td>
<td>Status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liposomal CUR</td>
<td>CUR, lecithin, and potassium sorbate. Liposomes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NanoBioSphere™</td>
<td>CUR, vitamin E, sunflower oil, and additives. SLN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-curcusorb</td>
<td>CUR NPs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nanocurcuma</td>
<td>CUR in nanocolloids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrivene Longvida™</td>
<td>CUR and soy lecithin, NPs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.7 CUR nanoformulations under clinical development
1.5 **Drug Delivery to the colon**

Targeted drug delivery to the colon is gaining increased interest not only for local disease treatment such as irritable bowel syndrome, IBD, ulcerative colitis, and colon cancer (Jain et al., 2007; Yang et al., 2002) but for systemic absorption for drugs which are unabsorbed or unstable in the upper GIT as well (Abraham Rubenstein, 1990; Sinha & Kumria, 2003). Advantages of using the colon as target site for drug absorption in spite of the fact that it is not suited for absorption is that dosage forms have longer transit times, there is reduced digestive enzymatic activity, and higher response to absorption enhancers in formulation compared to the upper GIT (Jain et al., 2007; Sinha & Kumria, 2003). Moreover, targeting drugs to the colon for localised treatment reduces the required dose for systemic absorption for the same treatment and thus, side effects is reduced (Abraham Rubenstein, 1990; Sinha & Kumria, 2003). Unfortunately, successful delivery of drugs to the colon without premature drug release or degradation in the upper GIT is challenging (Sinha & Kumria, 2003).

1.5.1 **Strategies for targeted colonic therapy**

The colon is located at the distal part of the GIT and therefore, drug delivery systems targeting the colon should protect the cargo from being released in the stomach or small intestine. Yet, the delivery system should have the functionality of sensing arrival to the colon based on the different anatomical and physiological characteristics peculiar to the colon. The sensing should be the basis of trigger of cargo release. In the next sections, I shall discuss some of the pharmaceutical strategies designed for the development of colon-targeted therapy.
1.5.1.1 Pro-drugs

The term “pro-drug” refers to a pharmaceutical inactive derivative of a drug linked to a carrier where cleavage of the prodrug brought about either spontaneously or enzymatically leads to drug release (Chourasia & Jain, 2003; Sinha & Kumria, 2003). The triggering mechanism for the drug release depends on the type of the linkage (Chourasia & Jain, 2003).

Typical examples of pro-drugs relevant to colonic delivery are the azo-linkages in balsalazine, ipsalazine, sulfasalazine, and olsalazine that bears 5-amino salicylic acid (5-ASA) for the treatment of IBD (Abraham Rubenstein, 1990; Chourasia & Jain, 2003; Rubinstein, 2005). Amino acids with –COOH and –NH$_2$ functionality may be conjugated with drugs where the linkage is hydrolysed by colonic microflora (Sinha & Kumria, 2003). Sugar conjugates such as cellobiose, galactose, and glucose are further examples of prodrugs that may be hydrolysed enzymatically by the colonic microflora such as glycosidase and glucuronidase (Sinha & Kumria, 2003; Yang et al., 2002). The major drawback in this approach is the need to re-evaluate the pro-drug formulation since it is regulatory considered a new chemical substance (Sinha & Kumria, 2003; Yang et al., 2002).

1.5.1.2 pH-dependent systems

The pH-dependent systems are based on the peculiar pH values of the colon (pH 6-8) compared to the stomach and small intestine (pH 1-2 and pH 6-7, respectively). In such systems, the formulation is coated with polymers that withstand the acidity and neutral pH conditions of the upper GIT. However, the polymers may ionize, swell or disintegrate in the colon due to the pH and thus release the drug (Chourasia & Jain, 2003; Rubinstein, 2005). Examples of such polymers are the Eudragit® products.
Particularly, Eudragit® L and Eudragit®S (Chourasia & Jain, 2003). In addition to cellulose acetaphthalate (Rubinstein, 2005). The disadvantages of this approach are the close pH values of the small and large intestine, variance of pH values in some health conditions, and inter-/intra subjects variations (Yang et al., 2002).

1.5.1.3 Time-dependent systems

The concept of time-dependent systems in colon drug delivery is delaying drug release until the formulation arrives the colon. The formulation should withstand the acidic conditions of the stomach and undergoes lag time, which is the time required to transit from the mouth to the colon (Yang et al., 2002; Chourasia & Jain, 2003). In these systems, the drug is coated with a swellable hydrophilic polymer, which resists the acidic conditions in the stomach, swells in the pH medium of the colon and thus, releases the drug. The delayed time of release depends on the physico-chemical properties and concentration of the polymer (Sangalli et al., 2001).

The first formulation fabricated based on this system was Pulsincap®. The main body is made of hydrogel plug coated with hydrophobic materials that is covered with hydrophilic cap. To protect the whole body from the acidic conditions, it is covered with an enteric polymer which dissolves in the small intestine, the concentration of the hydrogel plug determines the time required for the contents to be released (Chourasia & Jain, 2003).

Hydroxyl propyl methyl cellulose has been used to deliver pseudo ephedrine HCl and diltiazem HCl using this strategy (Roy & Shahiwala, 2009).

The disadvantages of this principle are the variable gastric time emptying, unpredictable gastrointestinal motility and its effect on GI transit of the drug, and
variability in gastric transit properties in certain health conditions such as IBD, diarrhoea, and ulcerative colitis (Philip & Philip, 2010).

1.5.1.4 Microbially-triggered systems

The disadvantages of the previously mentioned systems such as pH inter- and intra-variability, gastrointestinal transit time variability, and pre-mature drug release make these systems unideal for colon drug delivery (Sinha & Kumria, 2003). Therefore, researchers have proposed newer approaches to specifically deliver drugs to the colon based on microbial trigger (Sinha & Kumria, 2003). The concept utilizes the fact that the normal flora of the colon release enzymes specifically there that are capable of hydrolysing certain linkages such as the azo and saccharides linkages (Chourasia & Jain, 2003; Philip & Philip, 2010; Rubinstein, 2005). The polymers are capable of protecting the drug from the pH conditions of the upper GIT. Moreover, specifically deliver drugs to the colon (Philip & Philip, 2010). The vast majority of research on these systems have been devoted towards using natural polysaccharides. The advantages of using them are their availability, reasonable prices, flexibility, and safety in use. They can be obtained from natural sources, examples including, pectin (PEC), inulin, and guar gum, animals like chondroitin sulphate and CS, or microbial origin such as dextran (Philip & Philip, 2010). For example, CS has been used as enteric-coated capsule to deliver 5-(6)-carboxy fluorescein, CS succinate and PEC for diclofenac sodium and Idomethacin delivery, respectively (Philip & Philip, 2010).

Limitations of this system are the premature drug release in the upper GIT due to the swelling of the carrier and the microbial variety among populations (Rubinstein, 2005).
1.5.2 Mucoadhesion

Mucoadhesion has been employed in delivery systems as an attractive incorporation in pharmaceutical formulations where the GI residence time of dosage forms can be prolonged significantly (Boddupalli et al., 2010; Carvalho et al., 2010; Khutoryanskiy, 2011; Shaikh et al., 2011). The first therapeutic application of this concept was Orabase® in which gum tragacanth was mixed with dental adhesive to deliver penicillin to the oral mucosa (Khutoryanskiy, 2011). Recent statistics show an expanding interest in employing mucoadhesion of drug delivery sector (Andrews et al., 2009; Khutoryanskiy, 2011).

Mucoadhesive formulations should be adhesive, small, flexible, have high drug loading efficiency, and have controlled drug release properties (Boddupalli et al., 2010). Mucoadhesive drug delivery systems can be formulated as lozenges, tablets, films, gels, and solid micro- and nano- particulate systems (Carvalho et al., 2010; Khutoryanskiy, 2011) and they may be administered by ocular, nasal, buccal, gingival, gastrointestinal, vaginal, and rectal (Boddupalli et al., 2010; Khutoryanskiy, 2011).

The advantages of mucoadhesive drug delivery over conventional methods are their prolonged residence time that may be used to achieve superior bioavailability of cargoes (Andrews et al., 2009; Boddupalli et al., 2010; Khutoryanskiy, 2011; Shaikh et al., 2011).

1.5.2.1 Polymers used in mucoadhesion

Several factors dictate choice of polymer to achieve mucoadhesive properties, including type of functional groups, molecular weight, chain length, conformation, degree of hydration, pH, charge, concentration, cross-linking density, and flexibility (Andrews et al., 2009; Salamat-Miller et al., 2005). For good mucoadhesive properties,
polymers should have certain structural characteristics including strong hydrogen-bonding groups, strong cationic or anionic charges, high molecular weight, adequate chain flexibility, surface energy properties favouring dissemination onto mucous (Khutoryanskiy, 2011; Lehr et al., 1992).

Generally, adhesive polymers are mainly classified into three major categories: Synthetic and natural, water soluble and water insoluble, and charged and uncharged polymers (Roy et al., 2009).

1.5.2.1.1 Anionic polymers

Anionic polymers are the most commonly used mucoadhesive polymers in pharmaceutical formulations because of their high mucoadhesive properties and low toxicity (Andrews et al., 2009). Typical examples are carboxymethylcellulose (CBMC), PAA, poly carbophil, poly(methacrylic acid), PEC, sodium alginate, and Xanthan gum (Grabovac et al., 2005; Khutoryanskiy, 2011; Park & Robinson, 1984). The strongest mucoadhesive functionality of anionic polymers is observed under acidic conditions (Khutoryanskiy, 2011). Amongst the anionic polymers, carbopol, has the highest molecular weight and degree of cross-linking, and showed the longest period of mucoadhesion (Grabovac et al., 2005).

Mucin and anionic polymers have several structural similarities including negative charge and the presence of network of macromolecules, highly hydrated, form expanded networks, and have several carboxyl groups (Andrews et al., 2009). These similarities are believed to be the source of the mucoadhesive interactions with anionic polymers which leads to four possible mechanisms: i) strong hydrogen-bonding between the carboxylic groups and oligosaccharide chains of the anionic polymers and mucin, respectively ii) electrostatic interactions iii) hydrophobic interaction, and iv)
inter-diffusion of the expanded networks (Andrews et al., 2009; Bernkop-Schnürch, 2005; Khutoryanskiy, 2011; Leung & Robinson, 1988). In the present work, PEC was used as the anionic component of the composite and a detailed discussion of its physico-chemical properties that are of relevance to the work is discussed in chapter 2.

1.5.2.1.2 Cationic polymers

Although anionic polymers show good mucoadhesive properties, they are unable of forming mucoadhesive hydrogels. In contrast, cationic polymers have good mucoadhesive properties and are capable of forming them (Lehr et al., 1992). Mucoadhesive properties of cationic polymers have been extensively studied and used in pharmaceutical formulation for mucoadhesive drug delivery (Khutoryanskiy, 2011). Examples of such polymers are CS, dimethylaminoethyl dextran, aminodextran, polylysine, and polybrene (Khutoryanskiy, 2011; Lehr et al., 1992; Park & Robinson, 1984). Amongst them, CS has been extensively used due to its good biocompatibility, biodegradability, and low toxicity (Roy et al., 2009).

The main mechanism of mucoadhesion is by electrostatic interaction between the positive functional groups, and the sialic acid and sulphonic acid substructures of the cationic polymer and mucin, respectively (Farokhzad & Langer, 2006). However, it is believed that other interactions such as hydrogen-bonding and hydrophobic effects also play role in the mucoadhesion functionality of the cationic polymers (Andrews et al., 2009; Roy et al., 2009). The degree of contribution of each interaction vary according to the solution pH and the presence of other chemicals (Khutoryanskiy, 2011; Roy et al., 2009; Smart, 2005). In the present work, CS was used as the cationic component of the composite and a detailed discussion of its physico-chemical properties that are of relevance to the work is discussed in chapter 2.
1.6 Aims and objectives of the present research

1.6.1 Aims

The therapeutic efficacy of CUR as an anticancer agent has been widely acclaimed. The major drawback for use of CUR in colorectal cancer treatment is its low oral bioavailability. In this work, we believe that by encapsulating CUR in nanoparticulate delivery system that possess mucoadhesive propensity and capable of resisting the degradative effects of the upper GIT, we might be able to deliver therapeutic levels of CUR to the colon. We recognize the significance of protecting CUR from the onslaught of enzymatic or milieu effects of the upper GIT to act locally on tumours. We also recognise that the delivery system should ideally have a wide surface coverage to be effective against possible recurrence, especially if malignant. Therefore, the overarching objective of the present work was to develop a nanoparticulate delivery system with CUR as cargo since these have the largest surface area to volume ratio of all dosage forms. The NPs must meet desired physico-chemical characteristics and so a significant amount of work was dedicated to in vitro studies. Further studies were carried in vivo using animal models in order to test the proof of concept.

1.6.2 Objectives

- In chapter 2, we shall discuss the effects of formulation and processing variables on the physico-chemical properties of the NPs with a view to producing particles that demonstrate the lowest z-average, pDI, and highest surface charge.
- In chapter 3, we shall examine the mucoadhesive properties of the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and the release profiles of CUR as a function of several physiological constraints.

- Chapter 4 entails studies on the anti-proliferative effects of the NPs CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and investigation of cellular uptake of the NPs by the cells.

- The final chapter (chapter 5) shall examine the proof of the above concepts in in vivo settings through bioavailability assessment and other physiological studies.
Chapter 2

Formulation of Curcumin Chitosan Pectinate Nanoparticles
2 Formulation of curcumin chitosan pectinate nanoparticles

2.1 Introduction

2.1.1 Polymer of choice 1: Chitosan

With regard to oral drug delivery, NPs present several advantages including protecting drug from degradation, enhanced cellular uptake by endocytosis (Bowman & Leong, 2006; Mohanraj et al., 2006) controlled and sustained drug release, site-specific targeting and amenability to various other applications (Gelperina et al., 2005). NPs can be fabricated to adsorb on tissues and organs (Gelperina et al., 2005; Kayser et al., 2005; des Rieux et al., 2006). Moreover, the tiny size dimension means that they possess the highest surface to volume ratio of any other type of delivery system. CS is biodegradable and biocompatible so it is safe to use on biological systems. Its physical properties may be modulated at relevant pH for various applications (George & Abraham, 2006; Vaghani et al., 2012). Thus, it has been widely used in the food industry as an additive (Lorenzo-Lamosa et al., 1998), in medicine for wound healing (Skaugrud et al., 1999), in the pharma industry as a pharmaceutical excipient (Dodane & Vilivalam, 1998; Singla & Chawla, 2001), and as a permeation enhancer (Bowman & Leong 2006; des Rieux et al. 2006). Moreover, CS has mucoadhesive properties and recent research have been devoted towards studying its potential as DNA, gene, vaccines, protein, peptides carrier, and drug targeted delivery systems (Agnihotri et al. 2004; Bowman & Leong, 2006; Bayat et al. 2008; Dodane & Vilivalam, 1998; Singla & Chawla, 2001). With regard to the present work, we recognise that the major limitation in using CS for colon drug delivery is its rapid dissolution in gastric pH (George & Abraham, 2006; Lorenzo-Lamosa et al., 1998). Therefore, some forms of formulation intervention must be taken into account if a viable colon-targeted CS nanoparticles system is to be realised.
There are a number of CS-nanoparticle dosage forms currently under study. Qi et al. (2004) prepared CS NPs encapsulating copper for antibacterial activity. The antibacterial activity was studied against several microorganisms where antibacterial activity was correlated with adherence of the bacteria to the surface of the NPs. Mitra et al. (2001) fabricated dextran-doxorubicin conjugate CS NPs in order to decrease the toxicity of doxorubicin. The NPs were prepared using the microemulsion method, which produced monodispersed NPs of 100 ± 10 nm diameters. The drug-conjugate encapsulated in CS NPs was successfully delivered to the tumour site with extended circulation and accumulation time. The mean tumour volume was the lowest in drug-conjugate CS NPs compared to pure drug-conjugate and crude CS NPs after 90 days of treatment. He et al. (2017) formulated CS-Sodium tripolyphosphate (TPP) NPs using the ionic gelation method as a carrier for insulin. The NPs had high EE% and released insulin in a pH-dependent manner. In another study, Gan et al. (2005) used the ionic gelation method to produce CS-TPP NPs intended for gene and protein delivery with a size range of 100-250 nm. Moreover, they found that low molecular weight CS produced smaller sized NPs compared to the medium and high molecular weight CS.

2.1.2 Polymer of choice 2: Pectin

PEC is a heterogeneous polysaccharide and is the major component of the cell wall of most plants (Ashford et al., 1993; Munjeri et al., 1997). It is made up of polygalacturonic acid esterified with methoxy groups via α(1-4)glycosidic linkages (Malviya & Kulkarni, 2012; Liu et al. 2006). It may be classified broadly into two major groups based on the degree of esterification (Liu et al. 2006). Commercially, PEC is extracted from apple pomace and citrus peels (Sriamornsak, 2003; Willats et al., 2006), and is produced as a white to light brown powder (Sriamornsak, 2003). It is non-toxic and therefore has been safely used in food industries for many years as a gelling and
thickening agent in dairy products (Liu et al., 2006) as a thickener (Malviya & Kulkarni, 2012) and a colloidal stabilizer (Sriamornsak, 2003). In pharmaceutical industry, PEC has been used to lower blood cholesterol and glucose concentration, anti-diarrhoeal agent, and in weight control management (Sriamornsak, 2003; Willats et al., 2006).

At low pH, PEC is insoluble and its molecules tend to shrink due to the decrease in the carboxylic groups repulsion forces (Awasthi, 2011; Liua et al., 2003; Sriamornsak, 2003). Moreover, PEC resists degradation by gastric and intestinal enzymes whilst completely degrades by enzymes from colonic flora (Awasthi, 2011; Sriamornsak, 2003). Therefore, PEC possesses requisite properties relevant to the present investigation. In fact, this polymer has been extensively studied as a potential carrier for targeted colon delivery (Munjeri et al., 1997; Liua et al., 2003; Cui et al., 2009). However, PEC is soluble in the pH range of the small intestine (pH 6-7), resulting in the swelling of delivery systems and premature release of cargo. To overcome this obstacle, it is recommended that PEC be used in combination with other polymers such as CS, alginate, and Eudragit to form more stable matrices (Liu et al., 2006; Awasthi, 2011; Semdé et al., 2000).

Jung et al. (2013) successfully formulated PEC hydrogel beads for colon drug delivery with relatively high encapsulation efficiencies and restrained drug release at acidic pH, yet significant release at colonic conditions. Therefore, it is sensible to consider a composite formulation of PEC and CS to address the requirement of a restrained release of cargo in the upper GIT but yield significant release at colonic conditions.
Composite microparticles based on CS, alginate, and PEC have been produced for oral delivery of proteins with a pH-dependent drug release functionality. Drug release was significantly higher at higher pH compared to lower pH medium. Additionally, drug release was highest in media of high pH with colonic enzymes (Yu et al., 2009).

In the present investigation, we wished to fabricate orally administered CUR-containing NPs that may retain the drug load in the stomach and small intestine and only release in the colonic conditions with attendant mucoadhesive functionality. In this regard, PEC protects the composite formulation from the pH within the upper GIT. Furthermore, degradation of both PEC and CS materialises at the colon, which favours release of CUR (Liu et al., 2006; Semdè et al., 2000).

2.1.3 Sodium tripolyphosphate (TPP) as the cross-linking agent

Ionic gelation technique was chosen in this study because it is a nontoxic procedure and that the use of organic solvents was kept to a minimum. There are a variety of other crosslinking agents including gum arabic, glutaraldehyde, and genipin (Shu & Zhu, 2002). However, chemically-induced cross-linking agents such those imposed by glutaraldehyde and genipin may alter the physico-chemical properties of CS in resultant formulations, in addition to toxicity and other undesirable concerns (Mi et al., 2003; Shu & Zhu, 2002). Furthermore, gum arabic interaction with polycationic polymers such as CS results in formulations with low encapsulation efficiencies (Avadi et al., 2010). On the other hand, TPP is non-toxic, simple to use (Rodrigues et al., 2012; Fan et al. 2012) and relatively inexpensive (Shu & Zhu, 2002). Technically, it has quick gelling property and crucially, has been extensively and successfully used as the cross-linking agent in CS-based NPs (de Pinho Neves et al., 2014; Mi et al., 2003). de Pinho
Neves et al. (2014) formulated CS-TPP (CS-TPP) NPs and in such instances, the formation of the NPs is through ionic interaction between the positively charged amino groups of CS (-NH₃⁺) and the negatively charged tripolyphosphate groups of TPP (P₃O₅⁻) which forms inter- and intramolecular cross linkages with CS (Fan et al. 2012).

2.1.4 Particle size and zeta potential

Particle size and zeta potential are two essential physical parameters used in predicting the stability and functionality of NPs (Shekunov et al., 2007). The most commonly used method for particle size measurement is the Dynamic Light Scattering (DLS), also called photon correlation spectroscopy (PCS) and quasi-elastic light scattering (Shekunov et al., 2007). As illustrated in Figure 2.1, a laser beam (A) is fluctuated according to the NPs Brownian motion (B). Afterward, the detected fluctuations (C) are converted to a size dispersion using Stokes-Einstein equation. In this technique, cost and time are an added advantage and values recorded indicate absolute measurement without the need for further information (Bootz et al., 2004; Hoo et al., 2008; Shekunov et al., 2007).
The zeta potential gives an indication of the surface charge on the NPs and can be correlated to the stability of the dispersion (Xu, 2008). It can be measured using a laser Doppler micro-electrophoresis method in which an electric field is applied to a nanoparticle dispersion moving with a velocity related to their zeta potential (Clogston & Patri, 2011). The velocity is measured based on the light scattering effects and converted to zeta potential using the Henry equation. Advantages of this method are accuracy, sensitivity, versatility, and values are not affected by the liquid motion (Clogston & Patri, 2011; Xu, 2008).

In this study, we aim to study the particle size and zeta potential of particles produced as these play essential roles in the effective delivery of the NPs to the colorectal tumour cells. For instance, smaller particle size, particularly <500 nm, are required for enhanced adhesion and cellular uptake into the colorectal tumour cells (Jung et al., 2000; Yin et al., 2005).
2.1.5 **Scanning Electron Microscopy**

Scanning electron microscopy (Figure 2.2) was introduced by M. Von Adrenne in 1938. However, it was subsequently developed until first commercialized in 1965 (McMullan, 1995; Reichelt, 2007). Compared to light microscopes, SEM provides much higher magnification and resolution, up to 150,000x and 10 nm, respectively therefore, allowing to distinctly visualise nano-sized objects (Instruments, 2017).

In SEM, a fine probe of electrons with energies up to 40 kV is focused and scanned at the surface of the specimen, which results in the formation of secondary electrons, backscattered electrons, auger electrons, photons of various energies, and characteristic X-rays. The interpretation of these secondary electrons provides an image of the specimen (Bogner *et al.*, 2007; Rochow, 1978). The SEM technique provides two and three dimensional image of the specimen shows fine morphological details of the particles. The image provides direct information on size and size distribution, which are vital parameters in our study (Bogner *et al.*, 2007; Bootz *et al.*, 2004; Reichelt, 2007).
2.1.6 Fourier Transform Infrared Spectroscopy

The invention of the Fourier Transform Infrared Spectroscopy (FT-IR) can be traced back to late 1880s when Alber A. Michelson invented Michelson interferometer (Jaggi, 2006). FT-IR spectroscopy comprises of the emission, absorption, and reflection of spectrums attained by fourier transform of an optical interferogram. FT-IR spectroscopy is not restricted to the infrared (IR) frequency but can be used in the visible and far UV range as well (Jaggi, 2006). The instrument includes a black box of three optical inputs; IR source, He-Ne laser and a white light (Jaggi, 2006). The optical sources share the same beam splitter and mirrors, which are connected to an interferometer (Figure 2.3). The later generates a record of intensities as a signal called interferogram. The software then converts the interferogram to spectrum which represents a measurement of IR light intensity versus a property of light (Jaggi, 2006; Smith, 2011). FT-IR is used for the qualitative and quantitative analysis of samples and
for the determination of aromaticity, aliphaticity, and oxygenation rate of samples (Lamontagne et al., 2001; Smith, 2011; Vlachos et al., 2006).

In our study, it is essential to investigate whether the formulation process leads to the formation of new chemical interactions, which may result in an altered performance of the polymers and/or CUR. Therefore, FT-IR analysis was performed as an accurate and sensitive method for studying the interactions among the NPs.

![Schematic diagram of the FT-IR](Adapted from chem.libretexts.org)

2.1.7 X-Ray Diffractometer

X-ray diffractometry (XRD) is based on the fact that atoms in crystals are periodically arranged and so diffract light (Chauhan & Chauhan, 2014). As illustrated in Figure 2.4, the XRD comprises of an X-ray source (A), which directs the rays towards the sample (B) (US 6,665,372 B2, 2003). A detector (C) that detects the scattered, diffracted, or reflected X-rays in a pattern peculiar to the sample’s structure
A goniometer controls the sequential relative angular positions between the X-ray source, the sample and the X-ray detector (Goebel, 1994). Finally, the intensity of the pattern is plotted versus the angle of the detector in an output called diffractogram (Chauhan & Chauhan, 2014).

Samples analysed using XRD should be in the form of fine powder. A wide variety of samples can be studied including organic and inorganic compounds, polymers, metals, fibres, pharmaceutical, and nanomaterials (Chauhan & Chauhan, 2014).

XRD can be employed to study the crystalline content and phase of a material which might give indication on the release profiles of the material (Chauhan & Chauhan, 2014). XRD provides simple, easy, reliable, and sensitive analysis of samples (Chauhan & Chauhan, 2014), thus it was used in this study.

### 2.1.8 Differential Scanning Calorimetry

Differential scanning calorimetry (DSC) (Figure 2.5) is the most commonly used thermal analytical technique where the difference in energy inputs of a sample
and a reference is measured as a function of temperature over a duration of time (Barton, 1985; Gill et al., 1993; Gill et al., 2010; TAInstruments, 2017).

A furnace generates the main heat flow symmetrically and simultaneously through the sample and reference cells located in a disk containing temperature sensors. The temperature is then raised over time and endothermic or exothermic energy changes required to keep the temperature of both cells identical is plotted as a function of time and temperature (Höhne et al., 2003; Gill et al., 2010).

In nanomedicine, DSC is used for characterization of materials, comparison studies, safety and stability investigations, quality control, glass transition and crystallization behaviours. In our study, it was used to ascertain the crystalline state of the encapsulated CUR (Höhne et al., 2003; Gill et al., 2010; TAInstruments, 2017).

![Figure 2.5 Schematic diagram of DSC components (Adpoted from www.linseis.com)](image-url)
2.1.9 Aims and Objectives in this Chapter

The aim of this chapter was to formulate a CUR-containing CS-pectinate composite nanoparticulate using sodium TPP as the cross linker. The effects of processing and formulation parameters on the physical properties of the particles were also evaluated.
2.2 Materials and Methods

2.2.1 Materials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Supplier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Curcumin analytical standard</td>
<td>Fluka, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low molecular weight chitosan</td>
<td>Sigma Aldrich, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low methoxy pectin</td>
<td>CP Kelco, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methanol (analytical grade)</td>
<td>R&amp;M chemicals, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute ethanol</td>
<td>R&amp;M chemicals, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glacial acetic acid</td>
<td>R&amp;M chemicals, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium hydroxide</td>
<td>Merck, Germany</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2.2 Formulation of chitosan-pectinate composite nanoparticles

2.2.2.1 Preliminary formulations of CUR chitosan-pectinate composite nanoparticles based on order of addition

The stock solution of CUR was prepared by dissolving CUR in methanol at 1 mg/ml. CS was dissolved in 2% v/v acetic acid at 0.15% w/v and pH adjusted to 5 using 2M sodium hydroxide (NaOH). TPP, PEC and CaCl$_2$ were dissolved in purified water at 0.05% w/v, 0.05%, and 0.943% respectively. Four primary formulations of CUR-containing CS-pectinate NPs (CUR-CS-PEC-NPs) were prepared as shown in Table 2.1. The formulations differ in the order of adding the solutions, all of which were performed under magnetic stirring at 500 rpm. The formed NPs were centrifuged at 4000 rpm (18°C) for 20 min and the supernatant discarded. The collected NPs were re-dispersed in purified water for further analysis. Controls NPs (CS-PEC-NPs) of the four formulations were prepared in the same manner without the addition of CUR.
Table 2.1 Composition of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Order of addition</th>
<th>Formulation A</th>
<th>Formulation B</th>
<th>Formulation C</th>
<th>Formulation D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>300 µg of CUR drop wise into 25 ml of PEC solution with stirring</td>
<td>300 µg of CUR drop wise into 25 ml of CS solution with stirring</td>
<td>300 µg of CUR drop wise into 25 ml of PEC solution with stirring</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>25 ml of TPP solution added at 12.5 ml/ min with stirring</td>
<td>25 ml of CS solution added at 12.5 ml/ min with stirring</td>
<td>25 ml of CaCl$_2$ added at 12.5 ml/ min with stirring</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Additional stirring for 1 hr</td>
<td>Additional stirring for 10 min</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>25 ml of CS solution added at 12.5 ml/ min with stirring</td>
<td>25 ml of PEC solution added at 12.5 ml/ min with stirring</td>
<td>25 ml of TPP solution added at 12.5 ml/ min with stirring</td>
<td>25 ml of CS solution was injected with stirring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Further stirring for 1 hr</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2.2.2 Sub-formulations and optimization of the preliminary formulation

Further optimization was carried out by varying the quantities of CS, TPP, and PEC (3:1:1, 3:2:1, 4:1:1, 4:2:1, 5:1:1, and 5:2:1, respectively). Subsequent optimization of stirring times at order 3 and 5 respectively (2 min and 20 min; 2 min and 40 min, and 2 min and 60 min) at variable stirring speeds (500, 800, and 1000 rpm).

2.2.3 Size and zeta potential measurement

The size of the NPs was assessed as z-average diameter and the surface charge as zeta potential using Zeta Sizer Nano Series® (Malvern Instruments, UK) equipped with a 4 mW He-Ne laser at wavelength of 633 nm. Hydrodynamic diameter ($d$ nm) was measured by Dynamic Laser Scattering (DLS) at a scattering angle of 173°. The
zeta potential (mV) was determined by Laser Doppler Anemometry (LDA). The NPs were diluted before reading. CS-PEC-NPs and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were diluted up to 1 and 10 folds, respectively. Samples were run in triplicate and mean reading was taken.

### 2.2.4 FESEM imaging

Field Emission Scanning Electron Microscopy (FESEM) (Model Quanta 400F, FEI Company, US) at 10 kV was used to observe the morphology and surface topography of the NPs. Samples were prepared by placing one drop of NPs suspension on the stub and left to dry at ambient temperature 24 hr before viewing.

### 2.2.5 FT-IR analysis

FT-IR spectra of CS, PEC, TPP, CUR, CS-PEC-NPs and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were obtained using a Spectrum RX1 FT-IR spectrometer (Perkin Elmer, USA). Potassium bromide (KBr) disks containing the material of interest were prepared at a ratio of 98:2 KBr to material respectively. Data were acquired between 4000 cm\(^{-1}\) and 400 cm\(^{-1}\) with 64 runs and 4 cm\(^{-1}\) resolution at interval of 1 cm\(^{-1}\). Data captured were presented as the FT-IR spectra.

### 2.2.6 XRD analysis

Evidence of chemical association within the NPs was ascertained using XRD 7000 diffractometer (Shimadzu, Japan). Freeze-dried samples were finely grounded and prepared as a film followed by irradiation with CuK\(\alpha\) generated at 40 kV an 80 mA. Data were recorded at 2\(\theta\) ranged between 0 and 40\(^o\) at a scanning speed of 0.5\(^o\)/min.

### 2.2.7 DSC analysis

Thermal analysis of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CS-PEC-NPs were used to provide additional information on the polymer-drug interactions, if any and the nature of formed
NPs using DSC under nitrogen gas at a flow rate of 20 mL/min. Sample weight ranged from 8 to 12 mg except for CUR which was 1.8 mg. Samples were prepared in aluminium pans using a standard pneumatic press and then heated from 0°C to 350°C at a heating rate of 5°C/min. The reference was sealed aluminium pan.

2.3 Results and discussion

2.3.1 Particle size and zeta potential measurement

The four formulations (A, B, C and D) were formed based on the order of adding the components (CS, PEC, TPP) except for formulation D where CaCl₂ was used as the cross linker instead of TPP. Collected NPs as described in section 2.2.2 were re-dispersed in purified water for further analysis using Zetasizer® to determine particle size and zeta potentials of CS-PEC-NPs and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. Data collected is summarized in Table 2.2 below.
Table 2.2 Particle size and zeta potential data obtained for formulations A, B, C, and D of CS-PEC-NPs and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, n=3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formulation</th>
<th>Particle size (nm)</th>
<th>Zeta Potential (mV)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>1115.0 ± 2.0 *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>1296.6 ± 5.5 *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Visible particles/ Phase separation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>206.0 ± 0.6 *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>211.3 ± 2.0 *</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Visible particles/ Phase separation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Significantly different between groups (P< 0.001) for each formulation

One of the key goals in nanomedicine is to ensure that the particles are of a low size dimension. Therapeutically, this is crucial in instances where uptake of the particles by relevant tissue is the goal. Smaller sized NPs are more effectively taken up in the epithelia of the colonic mucosa (des Rieux et al., 2006). Phase separation due to extremely large particles (macroparticles) was observed in formulations B and D. In formulation B, TPP was added to CS, which resulted in the formation of NP whereupon the addition of PEC did not result in the incorporation of the latter in the NPs. Instead, the negative carboxylic groups of PEC (–COO⁻) electrostatically interacted with the free amino groups of CS (NH₃⁺) available on the surface of the NPs. This resulted in an increase in size and hence the formation of macroparticles. Similarly, in formulation D macroparticles were formed because of the use of CaCl₂ as the cross linker. PEC-based nanoformulations have been fabricated using CaCl₂ as cross-linker (Mishra et al., 2012) where ionotropic gelation occurs between Ca⁺² the –COO⁻ groups of PEC. In
formulation D, however, the addition of CS would have been after the NPs were formed (due to ionic gelation between CaCl$_2$ and PEC) thus, resulting in another ionotropic interaction between free –COO$^-$ groups of PEC and the –NH$_3^+$ groups of CS. Simultaneously, repulsive forces would exist between –NH$_3^+$ groups in CS and Ca$^{+2}$ in CaCl$_2$, all of which contribute to the formation of macroparticles. In formulation A, both PEC and TPP have negative functionalities and thus compete in interacting with the positive binding sites of CS and this impedes cross-linking propensity of TPP with CS leading to the formation of microparticles as well. NPs were successfully formed in formulation C, where the initial ionotropic interaction was formed between CS and PEC thus suppressing the negative functionality of PEC. Therefore, on addition of TPP it was possible for the negative groups of TPP to electrostatically interact with any free positive binding sites in CS which resulted in the formation of viable NPs. Figure 2.6 summarizes what we believe are the sequences of events leading to the formation of CUR-CS-PEC composite NPs. Formulation C was selected for further optimization based on the physical parameters measured. In Formulation C, there was a slight increase in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs size (p=0.0143) compared to the blank NPs due to the encapsulation of CUR.
Figure 2.6 Sequence leading to formation of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs
The effects of formulation variables on the physical properties of the NPs are summarized in Tables 2.3, 2.4, and 2.5. Table 2.3 shows the effects of varying CS, TPP, and PEC concentrations and ratios. Increasing TPP ratio in formulations 3:2:1, 4:2:1, and 5:2:1 resulted in a dramatic increase in the size of the particles, causing the formation of macroparticles and phase separation. This could be due to increased inter- and intramolecular interactions between TPP and CS and PEC (Fan et al. 2012). Increasing CS concentration caused a decrease in size of NPs due to the availability of free binding sites explained below (de Pinho Neves et al., 2014). CS molecules have two forces in equilibrium namely electrostatic repulsion due to protonated amino groups of CS and inter-chain hydrogen bonding interaction between CS molecules. At high concentrations of CS (>0.20% w/v) hydrogen interaction between CS molecules becomes stronger causing the involvement of more CS molecules in the cross-linking during the formation of a single particle thus resulting in an increase in particle size (Fan et al. 2012). Therefore, the highest CS concentration used in the present study was 0.25% w/v. Based on the DLVO theory, higher potential energy is required to achieve better stability, thus higher zeta potential values are required. The zeta potential values were all in positive; however, we observed higher potentials in the smaller NPs which reflects better stability. Hunter (1981) reported that NPs with zeta potential higher than ±30 mV are more stable. This threshold was achieved in formulations 4:1:1 and 5:1:1. CUR is known to exist in tautomeric forms such as the 1,3, -diketo and two equivalent enols forms (Manolova et al., 2014). The enol form (-RCO\text{H}) predominates in organic solvents as in the present study and competes with the TPP (-P\text{O}_{10}) for \text{NH}_{3}^{+} groups of CS. Additionally, due to the bulkier size of CUR relative to TPP, some free \text{NH}_{3}^{+} cannot be approached by TPP due to the stearic hindrance and this explains the insignificant lower z-potential of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs relative to CS-PEC-NPs. One of
the goals in the present formulation work is to produce NPs with practically as low as possible z-average due to the intended application. Such NPs with low z-average are desirable due to high surface-to-volume ratio. Moreover, narrow size distribution of the NPs (pDI< 0.500) enhance their cellular uptake as well as their stability (Nam et al., 2009). This threshold was achieved in ratio 5:1:1. Thus, ratio 5:1:1 was subsequently selected for studying the effect of stirring time and stirring speed on the physical properties of the NPs.

Table 2.3 Z-average, zeta potential, and pDI of CS-PEC-NPs AND CUR-CS-PEC-NPs as a function of formulation ratios, n=3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formulation (CS:TPP:PEC)</th>
<th>Particle size (nm)</th>
<th>pDI</th>
<th>Zeta potential (mV)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3:1:1</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>206.0 ± 0.6 *</td>
<td>0.475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>211.3 ± 2.0 *</td>
<td>0.574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:2:1</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Visible particles and phase separation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Visible particles and phase separation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:1:1</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>200.9 ± 6.9 *</td>
<td>0.331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>298.8 ± 9.5 *</td>
<td>0.526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:2:1</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Visible particles and phase separation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Visible particles and phase separation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:1:1</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>201.9 ± 8.5</td>
<td>0.359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>203.2 ± 3.2</td>
<td>0.381</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:2:1</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Visible particles and phase separation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Visible particles and phase separation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Significantly different between groups (P< 0.001) for each ratio
From Table 2.4, we observed a direct relation between the stirring time and the 
z-average for both CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CS-PEC-NPs. Ionic gelation is a 
spontaneous process and so the initially formed NPs become disrupted on prolonged 
stirring and grow in size. This disruption of the nanoparticle fabric also causes a 
decrease in zeta potential with longer stirring times. From a formulation and stability 
standpoint, a stirring speed of 500 rpm for 2 min. after the addition of CS to PEC 
followed by an additional 20 min. of stirring after the addition of TPP was deemed to 
be optimum and selected and so this formulation was further optimized using stirring 
speeds of 500, 800 and 1000 rpm. The data on the effect of stirring speed on the physical 
properties of both the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CS-PEC-NPs are shown in Table 2.5. 
Optimal physical properties in terms of z-average and pDI were obtained when stirring 
speed was 500 rpm, however, NPs formed at stirring speed of 800 and 1000 had higher 
zeta potential values which could be attributed to the compromised cross-linking 
properties of the NPs, thus, higher available (NH$_3^+$) groups of CS is available. This 
effect of stirring speed on size of the NPs has also been reported previously and is 
attributed to sheer mixing which interrupts the cross linkages of the fabric imposed by 
TPP much like the effects of extended stirring times (Zhu et al., 2014).

Table 2.4 Z-average, zeta potential, and pDI of CS-PEC-NPs AND CUR-CS-PEC-NPs as a function of stirring time, n=3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stirring time (min.)</th>
<th>Particle size (nm)</th>
<th>pDI</th>
<th>Zeta potential (mV)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2/20</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>194.9 ± 1.1</td>
<td>0.341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>200.6 ± 6.6</td>
<td>0.377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/40</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>195.9 ± 0.4 *</td>
<td>0.312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>285.9 ± 4.1 *</td>
<td>0.510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/60</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>198.9 ± 2.5 *</td>
<td>0.253</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2.5 Z-average, zeta potential, and pDI of CS-PEC-NPs AND CUR-CS-PEC-NPs as a function of stirring speed, n=3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stirring speed (rpm)</th>
<th>Particle size (nm)</th>
<th>pDI</th>
<th>Zeta potential (mV)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>194.9 ± 1.1</td>
<td>0.341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>200.6 ± 6.6</td>
<td>0.377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>215.2 ± 4.4</td>
<td>0.547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>231.7 ± 9.8</td>
<td>0.662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>287.0 ± 20.5</td>
<td>0.443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>289.0 ± 9.6</td>
<td>0.721</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The data obtained between groups for each stirring speed were statistically insignificant (P>0.001)

2.3.2 Morphology of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CS-PEC-NPs

FESEM was used to study the morphologies and surface topographies of the NPs. Representative images of the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs at two magnifications, 10 000x (A) and 20 000x (B) of the optimized formulation are shown in Figure 2.7. Generally, the NPs were spherical in shape and the sizes were in agreement with those obtained from the photon correlation analysis described in section 2.3.1. The NPs in both cases appear to be well-separated from each other suggesting that sufficient electrical charge is retained by the individual particle. The surface of the NPs is free of fissures or cracks which indicate effective cross-linking. Similar findings were observed in the literature (Ha et al., 2012; Mathew et al., 2012).
Figure 2.7 SEM image of the optimized formulation CUR-CS-PEC-NPs at magnification 10 000x (A) and 20 000x (B)
2.3.3 FT-IR spectra

The FT-IR spectra of the raw materials and formulated NPs are presented in Figure 2.8. In the raw materials, stretching vibrations of C=O group of CUR (A) appears at 1604 cm\(^{-1}\). No peaks can be observed within the range of 1800-1650 cm\(^{-1}\) which suggests that CUR is present in the keto-enol tautomeric form (Kolev et al., 2005). The CS spectrum (B) shows a broad peak at 3434 cm\(^{-1}\) which is attributed to the stretching vibration of the hydroxyl groups whilst the amide I (NH\(_2\)) bending vibration presents at 1653 cm\(^{-1}\). Furthermore, a peak appears at 1389 cm\(^{-1}\) corresponds to the N-H stretching of amide and ether bonds and the peak at 1081 cm\(^{-1}\) assigns to a secondary hydroxyl group (Paulino et al., 2006; Das et al., 2010). The broad peak of PEC (C) at 3400 cm\(^{-1}\) is assigned to the stretching frequency of -OH group. The peak at 1051 cm\(^{-1}\) is related to C=C or C=O double bonds within PEC while the peak at 1639 cm\(^{-1}\) is assigned to asymmetric stretching bands of COO\(^{-}\) groups (Gopi et al., 2014; Shi & Gunasekaran, 2008). The characteristic peak at 1129 cm\(^{-1}\) is assigned to P=O groups of TPP (D) while the one at 899 cm\(^{-1}\) is related to the P-O-P asymmetric stretching (Martins et al., 2012; Mi et al., 2003).

The aforementioned bands were all present in both the formulations CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CS-PEC-NPs, spectra (E and F, respectively). We may conclude that these groups are not typically involved in covalent chemical bonding with the other components during the formulation process. The FT-IR spectra of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs are similar to those from CS-PEC-NPs except for a slight shifting of the amine peak at 1562 cm\(^{-1}\) which is attributed to CUR loading in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. Furthermore, the peak attributed to CUR is absent in the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs spectrum which assures CUR loading in the latter.
Figure 2.8 FT-IR spectra of CUR (A), CS (B), PEC (C), TPP (D), CS-PEC-NPs (E), and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (F)
2.3.4 XRD data

To investigate the state of CUR after encapsulation into the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs an XRD analysis was performed. The XRD data of CUR (Figure 2.9) shows its diffraction pattern peaks 7.93°, 12.48°, 17.72°, 18.18°, 23.53°, and 24.60° implying a characteristic crystalline structure $2\theta$ range of 7–30°. In contrast, these peaks are absent in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs suggesting its conversion to the amorphous state because of the intermolecular interaction between CS, PEC, and TPP. A similar change in structure of entrapped CUR was also reported by several researchers (Anitha et al., 2011; Gou et al., 2011a; Rejinold et al., 2011; Yallapu et al., 2010a; Yen et al., 2010). This is crucially significant as the crystalline encapsulation of a drug hinders its release profile.

![Figure 2.9 XRD patterns of CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs](image)

2.3.5 DSC analysis

To further ascertain the physical nature of the NPs, thermal analyses were carried out on both the optimized CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CS-PEC-NPs in comparison with the raw materials. Figure 2.10 shows the DSC data where CUR (A), shows a sharp melting peak at 178.7°C, whilst CS (B) shows endothermal peak at 113.9°C and an exothermic peak at 307.4°C. PEC (C) has a transition peak at 190°C. Endothermic peaks
are correlated with loss of water associated with the hydrophilic groups in CS while the exothermic peaks result from the degradation of polyelectrolytes followed by the hydration and depolymerization reactions which happen due to the partial decarboxylation of the protonated carboxylic groups and oxidation reactions of the polyelectrolytes (Sarmento et al., 2006). TPP (D) shows a typical melting point of the salt at 116.6 °C. The thermograms of the physical mixture of CS, PEC, TPP, and CUR (E) showed similar peaks observed in the pure samples.

Thermograms of the formulations (CS-PEC-NPs and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, F and G, respectively) show a broad endothermic peak at about 89.5°C this is due to complexation of TPP because the sharpness of this peak in the physical mixture is lost but prominent in TPP. There is a broad exothermic peak at 269.3°C in both formulations and this is due to CS but is slightly shifted at 307.4°C in pure CS because of weak interaction. Furthermore, the melting point of CUR cannot be seen in the thermograms of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs because CUR is molecularly dispersed in the NPs in the amorphous state. This finding agrees with those of (Dandekar et al., 2010; Mohanty & Sahoo, 2010; Xie et al., 2011). Data obtained from the DSC analysis complements those of the FT-IR and X-ray diffractometry.
Figure 2.10 DSC thermograms of CUR (A), CS (B), PEC (C), TPP (D), physical mixture of CUR, PEC, CS, and TPP (E), CS-PEC-NPs (F), and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (G).

2.4 Conclusion

In summary, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs have been successfully formulated and optimized in terms of desirable physical properties. The most enticing properties were found with CS:TPP:PEC ratio of 5:1:1, most optimum stirring speed and stirring time were found to be 500 rpm and 2 min./20 min., respectively. The NPs were characterised in terms of size, pDI, zeta potential, morphology, chemical functional groups, and the physical state of CUR. These data present us with the incentive for further optimisation in terms of EE% of the NPs for CUR, release profile of CUR as a function of various physiological challenges, stability, and mucoadhesion at relevant physiological conditions. These would be discussed in detail in Chapter 3.
Chapter 3

Mucoadhesion, release, and stability studies
3 Mucoadhesion, release, and stability studies

3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 Mucin

The intestinal mucus is synthesized by specialized goblet cells and secreted by the epithelial GIT surface and is a water insoluble viscoelastic gel that adheres to the epithelia of the GIT (Atuma et al., 2001; Strugala et al., 2003; Andrews et al., 2009). The thickness of the GIT mucus varies between 50-500 µm in the stomach and decreases distally to a range of 15-150 µm in the colon (Pullan et al., 1994; J et al., 1991; Bickel & Kauffman, 1981; Bravo-Osuna et al., 2007). A balance between synthesis and secretion rates and abrasion through enzymatic digestion and/or mechanical shear maintains the thickness. Any imbalance may lead to pathological conditions such as ulcerative colitis (Atuma et al., 2001). Despite the low pH of the luminal cavity of the stomach, the pH of the mucosal surfaces ranges from 5.23-8.1 throughout the entire GIT (Atuma et al., 2001; Bahari et al., 1982; Flemstrom & Kivilaakso, 1983).

About 95% of the mucus gel comprises of water along with sulphated glycoproteins (up to 5%), and to a lesser extent free proteins, mineral salts, and lipids (Allen & Snary, 1972; Allen & Garner, 1980). The gel-forming properties of the mucus are manifested due to the high molecular weight of mucin. The glycoproteins are rich in amino acid residues such as serine, proline, and threonine. Moreover, glycoproteins contain fructose, glucosamine, galactose, galactosamine and sialic acid. Glycoprotein units are joined by disulphide bridges covalently attached to protein cores. In addition to glycoproteins, 5-10% of mucin consists of non-covalently bonded proteins. The sialic acid units of the glycoproteins (pKa =2.6) and the sulphate groups are responsible for the negative surface charge of mucin at neutral pH (Andrews et al., 2009).
Functionally, the mucus layer protects epithelia from the degradation and erosive effect of gastric acid, digestive enzymes, free radicals, and bacterial and ingested toxins and abrasion. Furthermore, it acts as lubricant, facilitating the passage of food through the GIT and protects it from mechanical injury. In the colon, the mucosal layer serves as a favourable environment for the colonic microflora, whilst at the same time, prevents bacteria from adhering onto it. This way, bacterial infections are prevented (Atuma et al., 2001; Bickel & Kauffman, 1981; Carbajal et al., 2000; Strugala et al., 2003).

3.1.2 Mucoadhesion process

The term “adhesion” refers to the molecular interaction at the interface between materials (Marshall et al., 2010). When, at least, one of these materials is a biological surface, it is called “bioadhesion”. When the biological material is particularly restricted to the mucus layer, the term “mucoadhesion” is used (Smart, 2005; Bravo-Osuna et al., 2007; Chickering & Mathiowitz, 1999). Recently, researchers have shown interest in taking advantage of mucoadhesion in localized and systemic drug delivery due to the extended contact time (Smart, 2005) of formulation with mucosa.

Researchers have proposed several theories explaining the mucoadhesion mechanism including adsorption, diffusion, electronic, fracture, mechanical, and wetting theories (Dodou et al., 2005; Smart, 2005; Peppas & Sahlin, 1996; Chickering & Mathiowitz, 1999). Therefore, we may conclude that mucoadhesion is a complex process that cannot be explained based on a single theory. The phenomenon of mucoadhesion is best explained by a combination of theories. Firstly, the contact stage, where the mucoadhesive compound binds to the mucus (mechanical theory), gets wetted and swells (wetting theory). Through this wetting stage, the mucus-material
interfaces are physically bonded (electronic and adsorption theories) so that the material and mucin chains interpenetrate and entangle (diffusion theory) forming additional covalent and non-covalent bonds (diffusion, electronic, and adsorption theories) (Dodou et al., 2005; Smart, 2005; Bravo-Osuna et al., 2007; Chickering & Mathiowitz, 1999). Mucoadhesive materials bind to mucus through a variety of forces including van der Waal’s, hydrophobic, hydrogen, ionic, or covalent bonds (Dodou et al., 2005; Bravo-Osuna et al., 2007; Peppas & Sahlin, 1996; Marshall et al., 2010; Chickering & Mathiowitz, 1999).

Factors affecting the mucoadhesive propensity of a material include intrinsic (structural) factors such as optimum molecular weight, degree of cross-linking, high chain flexibility, optimum surface tension, or external (environmental) factors such as the environment pH and temperature, length of contact time, presence of metal ions, and the shear rate of the environment (Dodou et al., 2005; Bravo-Osuna et al., 2007; Smart, 2005; Chickering & Mathiowitz, 1999).

3.1.3 High Performance Liquid Chromatography

The High Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC) technique was proposed in the late 1960s and has undergone several modifications since (Ornaf & Dong, 2005). It is a physical separation and quantification technique operated by carrying the analyte in a liquid phase. The separation is achieved by the distribution of the constituents between the mobile phase (MP) (liquid phase) and immobilized stationary phase (column) (Ornaf & Dong, 2005). There are several other chromatographic techniques however HPLC is the most versatile (Sandie Lindsay, 1997; Ornaf & Dong, 2005; Zhang et al., 2008; White, 1981) because of its superior sensitivity, precision, resolution, reliability, reproducibility, shorter analysis time, and
lower cost (White, 1981; Zhang et al., 2008). HPLC technique is widely used in food, forensic, environmental, clinical, and pharmaceutical industries (Zhang et al., 2008).

Physical separation is achieved in the stationary phase (column), which consists of uniform silica particles with spherical or irregular shape with sizes that range between 3-50 µm. They may be coated with various chemical groups in order to impart the desired level of polarity. This in turn is the basis of separation between analytes and the bonded phase of the column (Engelhardt, 1979; Lindsay, 1997; White, 1981). Based on the stationary phase polarity, two separation modes are available, namely, normal phase and reversed phase (RP) chromatography. The former comprises of a polar (silica) stationary phase, whereas the latter consists of non-polar (C18) stationary phase (Lindsay, 1997). The MP is carefully chosen in order to match the right balance between retention of analyte of interest against a matrix background.

Separated constituents are detected by a wide variety of detectors such as IR, refractive index, fluorescence, and ultraviolet light (UV/visible) detectors. The latter is the most frequently used detector due to its reasonable prices and sensitivity (Zhang et al., 2008; Lacourse, 2002; Christie, 1992). The choice of the detector is aligned to the maximum sensitivity obtained for the analyte. In the present pursuit, a UV detector was used for CUR because of the sensitivity of this technique to maximum absorption at specified wavelength.

3.1.3.1 HPLC analysis of CUR

Several HPLC methods have been proposed for the quantification of CUR, mostly employing UV-vis for detection (Wichitnithad et al., 2009; Wang et al., 1997; Syed et al., 2015; Pak et al., 2003; Hsu et al., 2001; Ireson et al., 2002; Ma et al., 2007;
Garcea et al., 2004). In this chapter, we used the method proposed by Wichitnithad et al., (2009) due to simplicity and sensitivity, albeit after minor modification.

3.1.4 Aims and Objectives

CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were successfully formulated and characterized as described in chapter 2. This chapter was dedicated to studying the mucoadhesion properties of the NPs, CUR release in various media as well as the stability of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs.

3.2 Materials and Methods

3.2.1 Materials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Supplier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Prepared as described in Chapter 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Prepared as described in Chapter 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curcumin analytical standard</td>
<td>Fluka, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low molecular weight chitosan</td>
<td>Sigma Aldrich, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low methoxy pectin</td>
<td>CP Kelco, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methanol (analytical grade)</td>
<td>R&amp;M chemicals, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute ethanol</td>
<td>R&amp;M chemicals, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glacial acetic acid</td>
<td>R&amp;M chemicals, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium hydroxide</td>
<td>Merck, Germany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetonitrile (HPLC grade)</td>
<td>RCI Labscan, Thailand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphate-Buffered Saline (PBS) pH 7.4</td>
<td>Sigma Aldrich, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucin type III from porcine stomach</td>
<td>Sigma Aldrich, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pectinase (Aspergillus niger)</td>
<td>Abnova, Taiwan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pepsin (from porcine stomach)</td>
<td>Nacalai Tesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreatin</td>
<td>Nacalai Tesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazineethanesulfonic acid (HEPES)</td>
<td>Nacalai Tesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrochloric Acid (37%)</td>
<td>R&amp;M chemicals, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium Deoxycholate ≥97%</td>
<td>Sigma Aldrich, Germany</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.2.2 Mucoadhesion studies

The mucoadhesive propensity of the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was determined by dispersing them in type III mucin solution obtained from porcine stomach at 0.1, 0.2, 0.4 and 0.6 mg/ml. The degree of mucoadhesion was obtained by measuring the changes in the zeta potential of the particles after interaction with mucin (Bhatta et al., 2012; Takeuchi et al., 2005). The CS-PEC-NPs and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs mucin suspension were vortex-mixed for one minute followed by incubation in an incubating shaker operated at 180 rpm for 1 hr at 37°C. The zeta potential of the NPs was then measured using the Zetasizer and the drop in zeta potential was recorded as a measure of degree of interaction of CS-PEC-NPs or CUR-CS-PEC-NPs with mucin.

3.2.3 HPLC assay for CUR

An HPLC method adapted from Wichitnithad et al., (2009) was used for the detection of encapsulated CUR within CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and for the CUR release after minor modification. The HPLC system comprised of a Series 200 pump, Perkin Elmer, USA equipped with UV/Vis detector (Series 200 UV/Vis detector, Perkin Elmer, USA) operated at a detection wavelength of 425 nm. A reverse phase column (ZORBAX Eclipse Plus C18, 250 mm x 4.6 mm, 5 µm, Agilent, USA) was used as the stationary phase and the MP consisted of 40:60 acetonitrile: 2% acetic acid filtered through 0.45 µm regenerated cellulose membrane filter (Agilent Technologies, Germany) prior to analysis which was run at a flow rate 2.0 ml/min.

CUR standard solutions were prepared in methanol (0.15625-10 µg/ml). The responses from the calibration curve were then quantified based on the area under the curve (AUC). The coefficient of determination ($R^2$) and line equation were determined
from the calibration curve. Sample concentrations were determined by comparing resulting area with those obtained from the standard calibration curve.

### 3.2.4 HPLC method validation

Because of the slight modification in the HPLC method used, validation in terms of method repeatability and accuracy was done. CUR solutions comprised 0.3125, 50 and 100 μg/mL representing low, medium and high concentration, respectively. The three concentrations of CUR solution were analysed in triplicate on the same day to determine intra-day precision and accuracy, whereas triplicate analysis on three consecutive days were performed for inter-day precision and accuracy determination.

### 3.2.5 Determination of encapsulation efficiency

The unbound CUR from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs pellet collected by centrifugation as described in section 2.2.2.2 was washed off twice in methanol. The amount of CUR in the methanol rinse and the supernatant were both analysed to determine the total unbound CUR using the HPLC method described in section 3.2.3. For the supernatant and rinse, 20 μl was injected directly onto the HPLC. The reported values are the means of three independent runs. The percentage of EE% was calculated as follows:

\[
\% \text{ EE} = \frac{\text{Total CUR added} - \text{unbound CUR}}{\text{Total CUR added}} \times 100\% \quad \text{Eq. 3.1}
\]

### 3.2.6 CUR release from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs

#### 3.2.6.1 CUR release from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in different simulated fluids

The variation in pH within the GIT and the effects of colonic enzymatic activity on the integrity of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were studied. For this purpose, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were collected by centrifugation as described in section 2.2.2.2 and washed. A 20 mg/ml suspension of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were suspended in phosphate buffer saline
(pH 6.4) containing 1% (w/v) tween 80 and 2.5% (w/v) pectinase enzyme as simulated colonic content. Similarly, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were suspended in 0.1 N HCl (pH 1.2) and HEPES buffer (pH 6.8) mimicking the stomach and small intestine mediums, respectively (Dutta & Sahu, 2012; Saboktakin et al., 2011; Beaulieu et al., 2002; Luo et al., 2012; Chen & Subirade, 2005; Jain et al., 2006). Each of the three types of the fluids containing CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were seeded into eight sampling vials and subjected to rotary shaking (WiseCube®, Witeg Inc., Germany) at 180 rpm incubated at 37°C. CUR release was studied over 6 hr at 20 min., 40 min., 1 hr, 2 hr, 3 hr, 4 hr, 5 hr, and 6 hr by withdrawing one vial from each of the media and its content centrifuged at 4000 rpm for 10 min to pellet the particles. The amount of CUR released was determined in the supernatant using the HPLC analytical procedure described in section 3.2.3 in three independent runs. The percentage of CUR released was calculated from the calibration curve described in section 3.2.4 and calculated as follows:

\[
\% \text{ released CUR} = \frac{\text{Amount of released CUR}}{\text{Amount of CUR initially added}} \times 100\% \quad \text{Eq. 3.2}
\]

To study the protective effects of PEC on the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, PEC-free NPs were prepared as described in section 2.2.2.2 (i.e. without the addition of PEC). CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and PEC-free NPs were suspended in 0.1 N HCl (pH 1.2) for 1 hr, removed and air-dried followed by viewing under FESEM as described in section 2.2.4.

Since the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs are designed to transit the upper GIT followed by exposure in the alkaline conditions of the distal GIT, the effect that this variable pH might have on the physical integrity of the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was studied by suspending the NPs in pH 1.2 for one hr, retrieving by centrifugation and then re-exposure in pH 6.8 for 2 hr. The zeta potential values and percentage retention of CUR were determined as described in sections 2.2.3 and 3.2.5, respectively.
3.2.6.2 CUR release from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in simulated gastrointestinal tract fluids

CUR-CS-PEC-NPs are designed to transit the upper GIT followed by the alkaline conditions of the distal GIT. Thus, the effects of such pH variation and enzymatic activity on CUR release from the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were studied. Firstly, the collected CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were suspended in simulated gastric fluid (SGF) (0.1 N HCl, pH 1.2, containing pepsin at concentration of 0.1% (w/v)) for 1 hr. Then, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were retrieved and suspended in simulated intestinal fluid (SIF) (HEPES buffer (pH 6.8) containing pancreatin and sodium deoxycholate at concentrations of 1% and 0.8% (w/v), respectively), for two hr. Finally, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were retrieved and suspended in simulated colonic fluid (SCF) (PBS (pH 6.4) containing 1% (w/v) tween 80 and 2.5% (w/v) pectinase enzyme) (Dutta & Sahu, 2012; Saboktakin et al., 2011; Beaulieu et al., 2002; Luo et al., 2012; Chen & Subirade, 2005; Jain et al., 2006). Figure 3.1 illustrates the aforementioned process. At designated time intervals (20 min., 40 min., 1 hr, 2 hr, 4 hr, and 6 hr) the amount of CUR released was determined in the supernatant using the HPLC method described in section 3.2.3 in three independent runs and reported as the mean of these runs. The physical integrity of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were investigated by studying the morphological changes on them at 30 min, 2.5 hr, and 6 hr using the SEM imaging as described in section 2.2.4.
3.2.7 Stability Studies

3.2.7.1 Storage

The effects of storage on the physical integrity of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was conducted at 4°C for 14 days. Physical characterization of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs including particle size, zeta potential, and SEM imaging were conducted as described in sections 2.2.3 and 2.2.4, respectively. Studies were conducted on day 0, 7, and 14.

3.2.7.2 Photosensitivity

CUR is photosensitive, therefore, CS-PEC matrix must offer necessary protection to encapsulated CUR from the degradative effects of light. This was studied after exposing equivalent concentrations of CUR encapsulated in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and free CUR within transparent vials to sunlight and UV light (263 nm) for 6 hr. At predetermined time intervals (2, 4, and 6 hr) CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were collected by centrifugation. CUR was retrieved by hydrolysing the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in methanol with vortex mixing for 1 minute followed by filtration through 0.22 μm syringe filter.
The filtered solution was then run using the HPLC method described in section 3.2.3. The reported values are the means of three independent runs. The percentage of retained CUR was calculated as follows:

\[
\% \text{ CUR retained} = \frac{\text{Amount of CUR determined from analysis}}{\text{Amount of added CUR}} \times 100\% \quad \text{Eq. 3.3}
\]

3.2.7.3 Thermal

To investigate the extent of protection offered by the CS-PEC matrix to CUR against hydrolysis induced by thermal exposure as is likely under physiological conditions, (37°C), equivalent concentrations of CUR encapsulated in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and free CUR were exposed to 37°C for three days. At day 1, 2, and 3, samples were sacrificed and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were collected by centrifugation at 4000 rpm for 10 min. and then hydrolysed by vortex shaking the samples in methanol. This was further centrifuged at 4000 rpm for 10 min and the supernatant filtered using a 0.22 µm syringe. CUR was quantified using the HPLC method described in section 3.2.4 and the % of retrieved CUR was calculated using Eq. 3.3.

3.3 Results and Discussion

3.3.1 Mucoadhesion studies

The term “adhesion” refers to the attractive interaction between two different surfaces (Salamat-Miller et al., 2005). Mucoadhesion, in particular, is the process where materials attach to the mucosal membranes of the body (Salamat-Miller et al., 2005).

As explained in section 3.1.2, there are six theories explaining the mucoadhesion process. Namely, the electronic, the adsorption, the wetting, the diffusion (Dodou et al., 2005), the mechanical, and the fracture theories (Smart, 2005).
In practice, however, the mucoadhesion process is complex and it includes a combination of all of the mucoadhesion theories (Dodou et al., 2005). Figure 3.2 illustrates the behaviour of mucoadhesive NPs at the mucosal layers (Bravo-Osuna et al., 2007).

![Figure 3.2 Schematic illustration of the penetration of polymeric NPs into the GIT mucosa](image)

Hydrophilic polymers interact with the mucosal layer through interpenetration followed by secondary non-covalent bonding (hydrogen bonding). The degree of polymer/mucous interaction depends mainly on the polymeric structure, type of functional groups, degree of hydration, and polymer concentration (Andrews et al., 2009).

Several experimental setups are available for evaluating the mucoadhesion of formulations including tensile tests, rheology (Tamburic & Craig, 1997), atomic force microscopy (AFM) (Sudhakar et al., 2006), and mucin- interaction assessments (Woertz et al., 2013). Generally, in vitro evaluation is preferred over in vivo studies mainly due to cost and ethical constraints related to sacrificing animals for such studies (Woertz et al., 2013). Using freshly excised animal mucosa provides characteristics close to those of humans, however, its use is restricted due to intra-subject heterogeneity, partial loss during purification and ethical issues (Woertz et al., 2013).
Therefore, researchers have developed synthetic materials from animal and plant sources as substitutes for mucous membrane (Woertz et al., 2013). Mucin type III from porcine stomach is one such example. After the rehydration of the lyophilised mucin, it possesses similar physiological, histological, and structural properties to those of the human mucosal membrane with minimal variability between batches (Sudhakar et al., 2006; Liu et al., 2005).

In the present study, the mucoadhesive propensities of the CS-PEC-NPs and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were determined using mucin type III in four different concentrations (0.1, 0.2, 0.4, and 0.6 mg) maintained in three different pH media (pH 1.2, 6.8, and 7.4) representing different mucosal thickness and GIT segments, respectively. The magnitude of mucoadhesion was obtained by directly measuring the changes in the zeta potential of the NPs after interaction with mucin (Bhatta et al., 2012; Takeuchi et al., 2005).

Figure 3.3 represents the drop in zeta potential at pH 1.2 (A), 6.8 (B), and 7.4 (C) where a direct relationship between the drop in zeta potential and mucin concentration is observed. The drop in zeta potential is a measure of the extent of mucoadhesion to CS-PEC-NPs and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs by mucin (Figure 3.4) (Bhatta et al., 2012). The drop in zeta potential of the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CS-PEC-NPs at pH 6.8 (B) was more drastic compared to in pH 1.2 (A), suggesting that the NPs are more mucoadhesive at pH 6.8. At pH 7.4 (C), both CS-PEC-NPs and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs registered higher mucoadhesion than in both pH 1.2 and 6.8. Variation in pH affects the surface charge on mucin, CS-PEC-NPs and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. Mucin has sialic acid residues which have a pKa of 2.6, resulting in a negative charge at physiological pH (pH 7.4).
There was a positive correlation between the drop in zeta potential and pH and this can be explained partly due to the low solubility of CS in acidic media (Lehr et al., 1992) and to the fact that at higher pH the ionised carboxyl functional groups of mucin (COO⁻) repel each other and change the spatial conformation from a coiled state into a “rod-like” structure, which results in higher accessibility for inter-diffusion and interpenetration (Bansil & Turner, 2006). The COO⁻ in mucin allows the positively charged –NH₄⁺ groups of CS to form polyelectrolyte complexes which results in mucoadhesion. At higher pH, the amine groups in CS become more positive and therefore forms stronger polyelectrolyte bonds with mucin. Moreover, at higher pH, PEC tends to ionize and swells, resulting in inter-diffusion and formation of inter-chain bridges with the mucin (Lehr et al., 1992). Therefore, the particles are completely covered by mucin at higher pH and thus register identical zeta potential as mucin. In addition, secondary hydrogen bonding between the functional groups of mucin and the OH and NH₂ groups and COOH groups of CS and PEC, respectively, may contribute in the mucoadhesive propensities of the NPs (Lehr et al., 1992; Sriamornsak et al., 2010).

Both CS and PEC possess polymeric characteristics crucial for mucoadhesion including strong hydrogen-bonding functional groups, high molecular weight, strong anionic charges, chain flexibility, and enough surface energy to spread onto mucous (Lehr et al., 1992).

Chuah et al., (2011) reported higher mucoadhesion in CUR-containing NPs compared to control NPs and attributed this to hydrogen bonding and hydrophobic interactions from the phenolic groups and aromatic rings of CUR, respectively. However, this phenomenon was not observed in the present study. In fact, both CUR-
CS-PEC-NPs and CS-PEC-NPs showed identical mucoadhesive propensities in all media studied.
Figure 3.3 Changes in zeta potential of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CS-PEC-NPs in pH 1.2 (A), pH 6.8 (B), and pH 7.4 (C)
3.3.2 HPLC assay for quantification of CUR

The amount of CUR encapsulated or released from the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was quantified using an HPLC system described in section 3.1.3.1. Samples containing CUR were calculated by comparing responses with a standard curve prepared in the same manner. Ideally, the ratio of the peak area to its height is constant, therefore, both peak area and peak height can be used to determine analytes concentration (Lough & Wainer, 1995). However, variations in peak heights may be observed in the presence of peak asymmetry, therefore, most HPLC analysis employ peak area for quantitative calculations as a more reliable alternative (Lough &
Wainer, 1995). Most CUR HPLC analyses are performed using reverse phase HPLC system (Ireson et al., 2002; Wichitnithad et al., 2009; Ma et al., 2007; Garcea et al., 2004) with UV detection as in the present study.

Figure 3.5 shows representative chromatogram obtained by adapting the method described by Wichitnithad et al., (2009) with slight modification. From the chromatogram, it can be seen that peak is fairly symmetric, sharp, well resolved and free from interfering peaks with a retention time of 10.5 min. Figure 3.6 shows linear calibration curve in the range 0.15625-10 µg/ml and R² value of 0.9997.

![Representative chromatogram for CUR at 425 nm (5 µg/ml)](image-url)
The repeatability or precision of the HPLC analysis was determined as inter- and intraday precision of the measurements (Table 3.1) for the concentrations 100, 50, 0.3125 µg/ml representing the high (HC), medium (MC), and low (LC) concentrations, respectively. The % relative standard deviation (%RSD) were all below 5.5%. The accuracy of the method was assessed and were in the range of 99.26-109.45% for the HQ and MQ, whereas the LQ accuracy was in the range of 109.86-118.61%. The limit of detection (LOD) and limit of quantification (LOQ) were calculated from equations 3.4 and 3.5, respectively and found to be 0.006 µg/ml and 0.019 µg/ml, respectively.

\[
Limit \ of \ Detection = 3.3 \times \frac{\text{Standard deviation of low conc.}}{\text{Slope of curve}} \quad \text{Eq. 3.4}
\]

\[
Limit \ of \ Quantification = 10 \times \frac{\text{Standard deviation of low conc.}}{\text{Slope of curve}} \quad \text{Eq. 3.5}
\]
Table 3.1 Precision and accuracy of the HPLC method.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Concentration (µg/ml)</th>
<th>Accuracy (%error)</th>
<th>Precision (%RSD)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intra-day (n=3)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HQ</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>109.45</td>
<td>0.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MQ</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>104.60</td>
<td>0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LQ</td>
<td>0.3125</td>
<td>109.87</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inter-day (n=3)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HQ</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>106.05</td>
<td>5.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MQ</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>105.81</td>
<td>1.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LQ</td>
<td>0.3125</td>
<td>113.39</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3.3 Encapsulation efficiency (EE%)

CUR is poorly adsorbed from the GIT and possesses very low bioavailability following oral administration hence, various formulations have been proposed to address the poor uptake from the GIT. Das et al., (2010) managed to encapsulate CUR in alginate-CS-pluronic NPs and the EE% was as low as 13%. In contrast, higher CUR EE% was achieved in other formulations. For example, Anitha et al., (2011) encapsulated CUR in dextran sulphate-CS-NPs at 74% EE%, Maya, et al., (2011) had EE% of 87% of CUR in O-carboxymethyl CS NPs, and Liu et al., (2012) formulated CUR-CS-NPs and achieved EE% of 70.9%. CUR is usually dissolved in ethanol prior to the encapsulation process therefore, the water miscibility of ethanolic solutions of CUR behaviour in the aqueous media is crucial to achieving successful encapsulation. This is because CUR is hydrophobic and requires to be in the dissolved state prior to formulation (Das et al., 2010). Higher concentration of CS may enhance the %EE however, this may also increase the particle size (Maya, et al., 2011). In this study, the EE% of the freshly prepared CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was found to be 64%±1.40. The incorporation of ethanolic solution of CUR
into PEC aqueous solution resulted in nanocrystals of CUR. As described in section 2.2.2.2, CS was added to PEC-CUR solution followed by TPP, thus, CUR nanocrystals were incorporated within the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. EE% can be enhanced by increasing the concentration of CS, however, this will cause increase in the particle size of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (Murkerjee et al., 2009; Das et al., 2010).

3.3.4 CUR release from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs

Cumulative CUR release in pH 1.2, pH 6.8 and 6.4 (with pectinase) are presented in Figure 3.7. A burst release of 15% of CUR obtained in the first 20 min. was followed by a gradual release over 5 hr. Eventually, a plateau was manifested in 5 hr with cumulative CUR release of 70.0% ± 0.2 at the end of study.

Figure 3.7 Cumulative release profiles from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in pH 1.2, 6.8, and 6.4 (with pectinase), n=3
Since CS and PEC have different pKa values (6.1-6.5, 2.9-4.1 respectively), based on the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation, they act differently in terms of protonation/deprotonation as a function of pH. In acidic conditions (pH 1.2), the amine groups of CS become protonated, whereas the carboxylic groups of PEC become neutralized. Since the ionization of carboxylic groups of PEC is limited and it has the dominant effect, the coulombic repulsion of the carboxylic groups is reduced which protects CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (Bigucci et al., 2008), however, negligible leaching of CUR was observed at this pH. At pH 7.4, the number of negatively charged carboxylic groups of PEC increases and hence electrostatic repulsion between ionized groups lead to chain repulsion (Munjeri et al., 1997). However, CS is insoluble at this pH so that CUR release was impeded (Yu et al., 2009). Despite this interaction and subsequent cross-linking, the catalytic effect of pectinase on the α-1,4-glycosidic linkages of PEC lead to breakage of existing bonds formed between PEC and CS which causes an initial burst release (Kashyap, 2001). In addition, some of the CUR adsorbed on the surface of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and those encapsulated near the surfaces might have partially contributed to the initial burst release (Anitha et al., 2011). A maximum release of 70% of CUR over the duration of the study reflects that a significant amount of CUR is retained within CUR-CS-PEC-NPs as similarly observed by other researchers (Das et al., 2010; Yallapu et al., 2010; Murkerjee et al., 2009; Anitha et al., 2011).

At acidic pH, the amino groups of CS undergo protonation hence, becomes soluble in aqueous media (Anitha et al., 2011; Agnihotri et al., 2004). This enhanced solubility of CS allows the penetration of water through CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, which results in swelling that facilitates diffusion of CUR from matrix (Agnihotri et al., 2004). Makhlof et al., (2011) evaluated the release of insulin from CS-TPP NPs in acidic conditions and they found that the NPs were only stable at pH > 3.0. In contrast, in the
typical pH range of the stomach (pH 1-2), the NPs rapidly released insulin due to disintegration and subsequent dissolution. In another study, Boonsongrit et al., (2006) studied the release of insulin and salicylic acid from CS-microspheres at pH 3 showed a burst release of 100% and 80% of insulin and salicylic acid respectively. On the other hand, PEC resists the degradative effects of acidic media and it is readily digested by the colonic microflora (Subudhi et al., 2015). However, PEC is highly hydrophilic and thus, formulations swell easily at the pH range of the small intestine (4.5-7.4) resulting in premature drug release (Mishra et al., 2012). Subudhi et al., (2015) studied the release of 5-FU from PEC-NPs in different pH solutions where a negligible amount of 5-FU was released at pH 1.2 (<12%), whereas rapid release was observed at the pH range (4.5-7.4) despite the absence of enzymatic activity. Similar results were obtained in another study, where Vaidya et al., (2009) evaluated the release of metronidazole from PEC-microspheres at pH 1.2, 4.5, 6.8, and 7.4. Metronidazole release profiles were directly proportional to the pH of the media, with the least drug release of 23%, which increased to 100% after change in the pH from 1.2 to 7.4, respectively. These findings strongly suggest that PEC formulations might have the ability of maintaining their integrity in the gastric media, but may swell and degrade in pH (5.0-7.4), thus resulting in premature drug release in formulations targeting the colon. In this context, these constraints were overcome by fabricating a composite nanoparticulate system comprising of CS and PEC. In such a formulation, PEC contributes to maintaining the integrity of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in the upper GIT, whereas CS protects CUR-CS-PEC-NPs from swelling in the pH of the small intestine (pH 7.4). With this plan, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs may successfully unload the cargo after colonic arrival prompted by degradation by the colonic microflora.
To study the level of protection offered by PEC against degradation in the acidic medium of the upper GIT, CS-PEC-NPs and PEC-free NPs were suspended in a 0.1 N HCl solution (pH 1.2) for 1 hr and the morphology of both NPs were studied under FESEM (Figure 3.8). PEC-free NPs (A+B) appear swollen and deformed with some degree of distortion after this treatment, which suggests degradation. Despite some negligible swelling, CS-PEC-NPs (C+D) maintained their morphology and integrity.

Figure 3.8 FESEM images of PEC-free NPs (A,B) & CS-PEC-NPs (C,D) after treatment with 0.1 N HCl (pH 1.2)

From Table 3.2 we note that there was an increase in the zeta potential of the NPs after exposure to pH 1.2 (P=0.0383), representing the stomach. This increase in
zeta potential is due to protonation of the amine groups of CS. At this pH, there is also a reduction in the magnitude of the negative charge on the carboxylic moiety of PEC. This combined effect on the amine groups and carboxylic acid in acidic media contributes to rise in surface charge. On the other hand, exposure of the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs to pH 6.8 after treatment in pH 1.2, caused a fall in the zeta potential to the initial value (P=0.0395). This change in zeta potential can be attributed to the deprotonation of the carboxylic group of PEC to the charged species (–COO⁻), allowing electrostatic interaction between –NH₃⁺ of CS. In parallel, the percentage retention of CUR within the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was ascertained after exposure to the different media. The percentage retention of CUR decreased slightly (P=0.2735) after exposure to pH 1.2, with further decrease (P=0.1963) in pH 6.8, however, this decrease is minimal and suggests that the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs have the potential to retain a significant amount of the payload against a variable pH profile within the GIT.

Table 3.2 Zeta potential and percentage retention of CUR in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs after exposure to pH 1.2 and 6.8, n=3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs prior to exposure to media</th>
<th>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs after exposure to pH 1.2</th>
<th>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs after exposure to pH 6.8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zeta potential (mV)</td>
<td>+33.1 ± 1.1</td>
<td>+37.9 ± 2.5</td>
<td>+33.0 ± 1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retention (%)</td>
<td>64% ± 2%</td>
<td>62% ± 2%</td>
<td>60% ± 1%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Following oral delivery, the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs will transit through the stomach and the small intestine before arriving the colon. Therefore, the release of CUR in these sequential sections of the GIT was studied in vitro as follows. Initially, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were exposed to SGF for 1 hr, retrieved, and then re-suspended in SIF for 2 hr. Finally, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were suspended in SCF for 4 hr and then retrieved by
centrifugation. The CUR release data (Figure 3.9) indicates up to 14% release in the SGF which is attributable to slight swelling (see Figure 3.10B) in this medium. As discussed earlier in this section, this swelling is attributable to CS. In SIF, further swelling can be observed (see Figure 3.10C), however the release was negligible. In contrast to both of these media, release of CUR was fast in colonic medium. Maximum cumulative release of 86% was observed after 7 hr of the study. Similar drug release profiles were reported in the literature for PEC-formulation for colon delivery of 5-FU and metronidazole (Subudhi et al., 2015; Vaidya et al., 2009), respectively. Figure 3.10D shows the morphology of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs after the 7 hr study period where, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs appear to have lost their integrity. Furthermore, very tiny debris can also be seen which might constitute degraded fragments of the NPs.
Figure 3.9 % cumulative CUR release from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in simulated fluids, n=3
CUR release from polymeric NPs depends on degree of cross-linking, size, density, and morphology (Agnihotri et al., 2004). In addition, environmental factors such as pH of medium and the presence of enzymes play a vital role in the drug release (Agnihotri et al., 2004). In the present study, we believe that CUR release is a combination of three release phases: firstly, the slight release of CUR in the upper GIT in simulated GIT and SIF fluids is attributable to CUR that was absorbed at the surface and near surface area of within the matrix of the NPs. Further release in these two media may involve leached CUR from the swelled matrix. After its exposure to the colonic simulated fluids, PEC became degraded, hence the degraded fragments of the NPs
provided a larger mass transfer of the cargo to the medium and hence a faster rate of release was observed.

### 3.3.5 Stability Studies

#### 3.3.5.1 Storage stability studies

The stability of the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs with regard to storage like any other dosage form is crucial as it determines the possible shelf life of the particular formulation (Wilson et al., 2010). Such studies might include physical appearance, texture, odour, colour, particle size, morphology, and chemical changes (Wilson et al., 2010). In the present study, the tendency of the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs to maintain their physico-chemical characteristics (size, zeta potential, and morphology) as a function of time was studied by storing the NPs in a refrigerator (4°C) for 14 days. Collated data on particle size and zeta potential as well as morphology are presented in Figures 3.11 and 3.12 respectively. In Figure 3.11, we observed a significant decrease in the particle size of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs at day 7. However, Figure 3.12B (Day 7) shows a collection of large and small particles, which can be explained by the fact that the DLS analysis is based on an average determination. The increase in pDI value (p=0.0113) reflects the high variability in the particle size distribution. Therefore, stability analysis based on DLS analysis alone may lead to misleading conclusions.

It is likely that the smaller sized fraction in the range are contribution from fragments of the particles produced during storage whilst the larger sized particles are produced due to swelling or Ostwald’s ripening. Swelling is likely to be the cause for the increase in size of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs because the particles retained their spherical morphology (Figure 3.12B). In contrast, Figure 3.12C (Day 14) shows an irregularly shaped particles (pointed with red arrows) which might be attributed to the
degradation/fragmentation and shrinkage of the NPs followed by a minor degree of swelling. This phenomenon was confirmed by the observation in further decrease in particle size observed from the DLS measurements. On the other hand, there was an insignificant decrease in zeta potential between day 7 and day 14 (p=0.5525 and 0.2659 for days 7 and 14, respectively). This attest to the fact that the zeta potential is mainly contributed by the surface moieties. Due to the changes in size and morphology with storage, the shelf-life stability studies were discontinued at day 14. These findings reflects the low storage stability of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, thus, the particles need to be freeze-dried and reconstituted prior to administration.
Figure 3.11 Size, zeta potential, and pDI values of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs at days 0, 7, and 14 of shelf storage (n=3)
Figure 3.12 Morphology of freshly CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (Day 0) (A), at day 7 (B) and day 14 (C) during storage at 4°C
Polymeric NPs such as those containing PEC and CS lose their integrity in the presence of enzymes such as pectinase. However, it was reported that such NPs prepared by ionic gelation might degrade in aqueous media in the absence of enzymes (López-León et al., 2005). NPs storage stability also depends on the ionic strength of the medium, pH conditions, cross-linking density, particle size, and particle size distribution (Fan et al., 2012). CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were metastable and failed to maintain their integrity upon storage. This could be attributed to the erosion of the NPs in aqueous environments. Subsequently, increment in particle size was observed in Figure 3.12B and eventually, spontaneous disintegration (López-León et al., 2005). In addition, the free polymeric chains might have interacted with the NPs network leading to further intermolecular entanglements and swelling (Rampino et al., 2013). The small size of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs is partially responsible for its poor stability. In fact, larger polymeric NPs have more inter-and intra-hydrogen bonding, thus, produce more stable nanogels (Rampino et al., 2013).

Spontaneous disintegration and aggregation of polymeric NPs under mild storage conditions in short duration of time is common amongst the polymeric NPs (Rampino et al., 2013; López-León et al., 2005; Borchard, 2001; Luo et al., 2004). In contrary, some research reported the stability of polymeric NPs for durations exceeded 3 months (Wilson et al., 2010; Fan et al., 2012). NPs stability might be enhanced by increasing the cross-linking density via increasing suitable cross linker such as TPP. However, this significantly increases the NPs diameter as reported in section 2.3.1 (Fan et al., 2012). Stabilizers such as polyethylene glycol (PEG) and PVA might be used to enhance the NPs stability (Wu et al., 2011).
3.3.5.2 Protection of CUR from photodegradation

CUR undergoes photodegradation both in solid and solution forms. Research found that photoanalysis of CUR upon exposure to sunlight is higher compared to UV light. In fact, CUR has been used as a photosensitizer in micellar formulations (Priyadarsini, 2009). The mechanism of photo-degradation in CUR is not well understood, however, it is believed to occur by the cleavage of the $\beta$-diketone link resulting in the formation of smaller phenolic compounds such as vanillin and ferulic acid. The presence of iron and aluminium salts influence CUR photo-degradation (Priyadarsini, 2009). Coradini et al., (2014) studied the photoprotection of CUR encapsulated in lipid-core nanocapsules. The study included the exposure of CUR nanocapsules to UV light and found that the lipid nanocapsules significantly protected CUR from UV-decomposition. Half-lives of CUR solution and CUR-loaded lipid nanocapsules were 4.29 ± 0.62 and 7.25 ± 0.54 min., respectively. Xiao et al., (2015) found that encapsulated CUR in polymeric matrix immensely protected it against UV degradation. After 270 min. of UV treatment, only 25% of CUR was retrieved from ethanolic CUR solution. On the other hand, >50% of CUR was retrieved from carboxymethyl CS NPs.

Since CUR is encapsulated in its inactive form in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, it is hypothesized that CUR wont undergo degradation when exposed to light. To ascertain this hypothesis, equivalent amounts of pure CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were exposed to sunlight and UV light (253 nm) in transparent vials for 6 hr. % retrieved CUR as shown in Figure 3.13. From the data obtained in Figure 3.13A, pure CUR undergoes extensive photodegradation and was almost completely degraded at the end of the study, in contrast, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs significantly protect CUR from degradation, and however, 23% of CUR had undergone photo-degradation at the end of the study. UV
light had a milder photo-degradative effect on both CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (Figure 3.13B). 94% of encapsulated CUR was protected in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, whereas more than 50% of pure CUR was degraded at the duration of the study.
Figure 3.13 % retention of CUR from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CUR ethanolic solution vials upon exposure to sunlight (A) and UV light at 253 nm (B), n=3
The enhanced photostability of CUR in the NPs could be attributed to its encapsulation in the inactive form (Jiayin Zhao & Wu, 2006). In addition, the accumulation of CUR within CUR-CS-PEC-NPs protected by the polymeric matrix away from light and the oxidizing environment such as ROS and water could be a contributing factor (Suwannateep et al., 2012). Thus, CUR photostability was assured via encapsulation in the CS-PEC-NPs.

3.3.5.3 Protection of CUR from thermal degradation

CUR might undergo decomposition at physiological temperature (37°C) during its transit to the colon. To ascertain the stability of the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in protection of the CUR by thermal degradation, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and pure CUR were placed in water bath at 37°C for three days. Sampling was performed at the end of each day where retrieved CUR was assayed using HPLC. The CS-PEC-NPs matrix protected CUR from thermal degradation for the whole duration of the study, whereas gradual decomposition of pure CUR was observed where less than 60% of CUR was retained at the end of the study (Figure 3.14). It is believed that due to the presence of CUR in amorphous state in the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in addition to the protection offered by the CS-PEC-NPs matrix, CUR was less prone to becoming degraded due the thermal changes. These findings were in agreement with Kumara & Madhysydhan (2015) and Rahman et al. (2014).
Figure 3.14 Thermal stability of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CUR at 37 °C, n=3
3.4 Conclusion

In this chapter, the ability of CS-PEC-NPs to encapsulate CUR, maintain their integrity in the upper GIT and unload CUR in the colonic conditions were confirmed in vitro. The in vitro mucoadhesion between CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and mucin was also confirmed. These findings could provide indication on how CUR-CS-PEC-NPs might interact with the various GIT conditions in vivo. It is anticipated that CUR-CS-PEC-NPs would behave in a similar manner in vivo, where prolonged contact with the colonic epithelium might occur, in addition, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs might remain intact through their transit in the upper GIT and eventually, deliver CUR in the colon. The CUR-CS-PEC-NPs appeared to be unstable for storage up to 14 days when in solution, however, freshly prepared CUR-CS-PEC-NPs significantly protect their CUR cargo from light and thermal effects of the physiological temperature. The CUR-CS-PEC-NPs are thus well primed for further investigation where the anti-cancer and apoptotic efficacy and as well cellular uptake will be discussed in chapter 4.
Chapter 4

In Vitro Cell Evaluation of Formulation
4. In Vitro Evaluation of Formulation

4.1 Introduction

4.1.1 Cell culture

Cell culture, first introduced in 1907, is the process by which cells are removed from an animal or plant and subsequently grown in controlled artificial environment (Invitrogen 2010; ATCC, 2003). The primary culture is the first batch of cells after isolation from the tissues and the subculture (passage) represent subsequent cultures from the primary stock. Subcultures require a new vessel and fresh growth medium for growth to manifest (Invitrogen, 2010).

Primary cultures generate heterogeneous population of cells, whereas subcultures cells generate a homogeneous cell line (subclone) (ATCC, 2003). The primary cells can undergo limited number of passages due to Hayflick Limit effect, culture conditions, and depletion of nutrients (ATCC, 2003). Essential nutrients for cells growth include amino acids, carbohydrates, salts and vitamins which are supplied by the growth medium. Growth factors, hormones, lipids, and binding proteins can be obtained from the serum (Allaire et al., 2010; Invitrogen, 2010). Foetal and new-born calf sera are favoured for cell culture work as they provide higher concentrations of components (Langdon, 2003). Environmental conditions include controlled temperature (36.5°C ± 1°C), pH (7.2-7.4), gases (O₂ and 5% CO₂), and osmotic pressure (Invitrogen, 2010).

Cell culture is one of the essential tools used in cellular and molecular biology, it is used as a model system for studying the normal physiology of cells, cytotoxicity testing, nutritional studies, carcinogenesis (ATCC, 2003; Invitrogen, 2010). It is extensively used in drugs development and genetic engineering (Allaire et al., 2010).
The main advantages of employing cell culture for these applications are the consistency and reproducibility of the obtained results (Invitrogen, 2010).

One of the major challenges in cell culture is contamination which could be bacterial, viral, yeast, or fungal (Perlman, 1962). Biological effects resulting from contamination include competition for nutrients with host cells, secreted by-products which stops the growth of the host cells (Allaire et al., 2010). There are several antibiotics that can be used in cell culture like penicillin, streptomycin, amoxicillin, gentamycin, or combination of two antibiotics. However, long term use of antibiotics is not favourable as it results in antibiotics resistance and hides the presence of contamination such as mycoplasma contamination (Perlman, 1962).

4.1.2 Cell lines

Human colorectal adenocarcinoma cell line HT-29 was used to study the antiproliferative effects of CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. The cells produce the secretory component of IgA, carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), transforming growth factor binding protein, and most crucially, mucin (ATCC, 2017a). HT-29 is one of the most commonly used cell lines for studying the antiproliferative effects of new drug entities or for formulations against colorectal cancer. It was used to study the antiproliferative effects of CUR (Goel et al., 2001; Aggarwal et al., 2003; Song et al., 2005; Johnson & Mukhtar, 2007; Lee et al., 2009) and CUR-nanoformulations (Ha et al., 2012; Deepa, et al., 2014; Anitha, et al., 2014) against colorectal cancer.

MRC-5 are normal lung fibroblast, originally isolated from human lung tissues of 14-weeks old Caucasian male foetus (ATCC, 2017b). It is the most commonly used fibroblast human cells in the production of viral vaccines (Zhang et al., 2014). The major advantage of MRC-5 is its capability to grow for more than 40 passages while
maintaining normal diploid karyotype. Its use as control (normal) cell line against colorectal cancer cell lines have been extensively reported in the literature (Herlyn et al., 1979; Frixen et al., 1991; Bhattacharyya et al., 1994; Tokunaga et al., 2000; Tan et al., 2011; Gandin et al., 2012). Therefore, it was used as the control cell line in this study.

4.1.3 Fluorescence microscopy

Several subjects can be viewed by the light microscope via light reflection, scattering, and absorption. However, the light microscope is not capable of providing optical contrast necessary for detailed visualisation of structural components in materials such as colloids, polymers, crystals, and biological cells (Lavrentovich, 2012). Therefore, fluorescence microscopy was developed in which the contrast between the material (signal) and the surrounding (background) is enhanced (Lichtman & Conchello, 2005). Fluorescence microscopy provides intrinsic selectivity, therefore this technique has become the most commonly used microscopy in biology (Lichtman & Conchello, 2005).

In fluorescence microscopy (Figure 4.1), a laser beam is directed to the specimen. This causes excitation of fluorophores and a shorter wavelength is emitted nanoseconds later. The difference between the excited and emitted wavelength is called Stokes shift. The exciting light is then filtered out while the emitted fluorescence is then reflected as a fluorescent image (Lichtman & Conchello, 2005; Mueller, 2005).

Subjects can be detected by fluorescence microscopy only if they have fluorophores. The efficiency of a subject fluorescing depends on the wavelengths of absorption and emission as well as the outermost electron orbitals of the fluorophores (Lichtman & Conchello, 2005). Organic objects may be intrinsically fluoresce if they
have fluorophores (auto-fluorescence) or they can be labelled with fluorescent compounds (Lichtman & Conchello, 2005). The fluorescent specimen can be viewed directly by the eye or via a rapid camera attached to arc lamps. Light sources of fluorescence microscope are mercury and xenon arc lamps. The former provides several extremely intense light, whereas the latter is relatively even in covering the wavelengths of UV, visible, and near IR. However, both of them are expensive, dangerous, and require special lamp houses (Lichtman & Conchello, 2005).

Figure 4.1 Basic components of inverted fluorescence microscope (Adopted from www.jic.ac.uk)
4.1.4 Mycoplasma

Amongst the various contaminants prone to cell culture, the most common concern contamination is mycoplasmic infections (Drexler & Uphoff, 2002). Mycoplasmas are tiny self-replicating organisms (Timenestsky, 1997). Contrary to regular bacteria, mycoplasma lack rigid cell walls (Timenestsky, 1997) and grow very slowly (Drexler & Uphoff, 2002). Mycoplasmas were first isolated in 1957 (Timenestsky, 1997). Mammalian and avian cell lines are more vulnerable to mycoplasmic infections (Timenestsky, 1997). Continuous cell lines are more frequently infected compared to primary cell culture (Rottem et al., 2012).

The extent of mycoplasma infection on inhabitant cells depends on the type of the cell lines, the culture conditions, mycoplasma species, and the intensity and duration of mycoplasma infection (Drexler & Uphoff, 2002). The effects might be minimal and the cells might appear healthy, mycoplasmas might interfere in the cell culture structure, growth, and metabolism (Timenestsky, 1997). Nonetheless, mycoplasma infection can cause severe cytopathic effects characterized by feeble, abnormal growth and degeneration of cells, and eventually death of cells (Rottem et al., 2012). A vast array of detection methods have been developed to detect mycoplasma infection in cell cultures such as SEM, colony formation on agar, universal PCR primers, and RNA hybridization (Drexler & Uphoff, 2002). However, these techniques vary in their overall efficiency, require very close quality control and specialized techniques (McGarrity et al., 1983). DNA fluorochrome staining such as 4’,6’-diamidino-2-phenylindole (DAPI) and Hoechst 33258 staining provides sensitive, specific, simple, efficient, and cost effective detection method (Drexler & Uphoff, 2002). In such procedure, mycoplasmas characteristic particulate around the host cells can be viewed under fluorescence (Figure 4.2) (Rottem et al., 2012).
4.1.5 MTT assay

The cell viability and proliferation studies are amongst the most crucial in vitro assays in new drugs or formulations development process. The yellow tetrazolium MTT (3-(4,5-dimethylthiazolyl-2)-2,5-diphenyl tetrazolium bromide) assay has been widely employed for cell proliferation measurements (Riss et al., 2013; ATCC, 2017). MTT assay has been widely reported in studying cross-resistance amongst drugs, drug sensitivity, drug screening on cell lines, and testing drugs combinations (Langdon, 2003).
MTT gives a yellow aqueous solution and easily penetrates viable cells. It is positively charged and become reduced via the hydrogenases produced by the metabolically viable cells to the water insoluble violet-blue formazan (Figure 4.3) (Stockert et al., 2012; Riss et al., 2013). The generated formazan precipitate inside the cells and near cell surface.

![Insoluble formazan precipitated inside and near viable cells](image)

Figure 4.3 Insoluble formazan precipitated inside and near viable cells(Riss et al., 2013)

4.1.6 Aims and objectives

The CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were successfully optimized and characterised as described in chapter 2. The mucoadhesive propensity, drug release profiles, and stability studies were studied in chapter 3. In this chapter, the antiproliferative efficacy and cellular uptake of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs against colorectal cancer cell lines (HT-29)
were evaluated. The selectivity of the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was also studied. The therapeutic efficacy of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was studied in comparison with the free CUR to ascertain whether the anticancer effects of CUR are maintained after encapsulation in CS-PEC-NPs.

4.2 Materials and methods

4.2.1 Materials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Supplier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Prepared as described in Chapter 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Prepared as described in Chapter 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dulbecco's Modified Eagle's Medium (DMEM), 4.5 g/l glucose with L-glutamine, Sodium pyruvate-free.</td>
<td>NacalaiTesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roswell Park Memorial Institute (RPMI) – 1640 Medium</td>
<td>Sigma Aldrich, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foetal Bovine Serum (FBS)</td>
<td>NacalaiTesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trypsin EDTA</td>
<td>NacalaiTesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3-(4,5-dimethylthiazolyl-2)-2,5-diphenyl tetrazolium bromide) (MTT)</td>
<td>NacalaiTesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO)</td>
<td>NacalaiTesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium and Magnesium free Phosphate Buffered Saline (PBS) pH 7.4</td>
<td>NacalaiTesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trypan Blue</td>
<td>Sigma Aldrich, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4',6’-diamidino-2-phenylindole (DAPI)</td>
<td>NacalaiTesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillin-Streptomycin mixed solution (stabilized)</td>
<td>NacalaiTesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2.2  Maintenance of cell culture

The human colorectal adenocarcinoma cell line HT-29 and normal lung fibroblast MRC-5 were both donated by the National Cancer Council, Malaysia (MAKNA) laboratory, University Putra Malaysia, Malaysia. The HT-29 and MRC-5 cells were grown as a monolayer culture in Dulbecco's Modified Eagle's Medium (DMEM) and Roswell Park Memorial Institute (RPMI) – 1640, respectively. Media were supplemented with 10% FBS under standard cell culture conditions of 37°C and 5% CO₂.

4.2.3  Subculture of cells

For both cell cultures, cells were harvested by aspirating the medium and gently rinsing the cells with Ca²⁺ and Mg²⁺ free PBS, twice. Trypsin-EDTA was added to the flasks to detach the cells. After incubation at 37°C for 5-7 min, flasks were gently tapped to detach all cells from the culture surface. The cells were then viewed under inverted microscope (Nikon Eclipse TS1100-F, Japan) to ascertain that all cells were detached. The cells were then re-suspended in fresh media and centrifuged at 1000 rpm at 25°C (Eppendorf 5424, Germany) for 8 min. The supernatant was discarded and the harvested cells were re-suspended in fresh growth media. The cells suspension was then diluted and distributed into several flasks. Penicillin-Streptomycin mixed solution was occasionally used at 1% concentration, however, at least three passages of antibiotics-free media were cultured before any evaluation to minimize any possible interferences in the data due to antibiotics use.

4.2.4  Cells counting

The cells were harvested from the flask of confluent cells as described in section 4.2.3 and properly diluted with media. A 10 µl aliquot of cells were thoroughly mixed
with 10 μl of trypan blue. A cover slip was placed on the counting chamber and then 10 μl of the cells suspension was applied to the surface of the hemacytometer using the two opposing edges of the cover slip and allowed to spread into the chamber by capillary force. The chamber was then viewed under the inverted microscope with a 10X objective. Cells in the four outside gridded squares excluding dead cells stained by trypan blue and the two outer perimeters (Figure 4.4) were counted. The number of cells per 1mm² was calculated as the average of the four counted chamber sides. The total number of cells was calculated as follows:

Number of cells per 1 ml = average cells per 1mm² x 10⁴

Total number of cells = number of cells per 1 ml x dilution factor of trypan blue x dilution factor of media

Figure 4.4 Hemacytometer grid (A) viable cells (not stained by trypan blue) inside the grid and at the interior perimeters are counted (B) (Adopted and modified from www.humanimmunologyportal.com)

4.2.5 Check for mycoplasma

The HT-29 cells were tested for possible mycoplasma contamination by seeding 1 x 10⁵ cells on a sterile cover slip in a 6 well plate and allowed to attach for 24 hr with appropriate medium. The medium was aspirated and the cells were gently washed with
PBS, twice. The cells were then fixed with 3.7% formaldehyde for 10 min. followed by aspiration and washing of with PBS, once. The cover slips were left to dry for 10 min. A 2 ml aliquot of DAPI working solution (1µg/ ml) was added to the cover slips and incubated for 15 min. in dark. Finally, the cover slips were washed with PBS and viewed under inverted fluorescence microscope (AX10, Carl Zeiss, Germany) with 430-495 filter.

4.2.6  MTT assay

4.2.6.1  MTT assay for HT-29 cells

The cell viability (MTT) assay was carried out to determine the effects of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs on HT-29 cell growth. The cells were seeded in a 96 well plates at 2 x 10^3 cells/well and allowed to attach for 24 hr. The culture medium was then replaced with medium containing free CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs at the following concentrations: 75, 90, 110, 130, and 150 µM. The cells treated with CS-PEC-NPs and Dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) were used as negative controls whereas 15 µM of 5-FU was used as positive control. At time intervals of 24, 48, and 72 hr, treatment media were aspirated and 10 µl of MTT solution (5mg/ ml) added. After 4 hr of dark incubation at 37ºC, 100 µl aliquot of DMSO was added and mixed at 40 rpm using a laboratory shaker (S1000 Gyrotwister, Labnet, USA). The plate absorbance was then measured at 570 nm using microplate reader (Epoch, Biotek, USA). The relative growth inhibition compared to untreated cells was measured and the mean values were presented (n=5).

4.2.6.2  MTT assay for MRC-5 cells

The MTT assay was carried out on MRC-5 cells to study the selectivity of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs against tumour cells rather than normal cells. Cells were seeded in 96
well plates at 1x10⁵ cells/well and allowed to attach for 24 hr. The culture medium was then replaced with media containing free CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs at 75 or 150 µM, representing low and high treatment concentration, respectively. The cells treated with CS-PEC-NPs and DMSO were used as negative controls whereas 15 µM 5-FU was used as positive control. At time points of 24, 48, and 72 hr, MTT assay was carried out as described in section 4.2.6.1. The relative growth inhibition compared to untreated cells was measured and the mean values were presented (n=5).

4.2.7 Cellular uptake

4.2.7.1 Qualitative cellular uptake

Naturally, CUR emits green fluorescence when viewed under a 535-600 nm filter (blue filter, FITC channel). Thus, HT-29 cells were harvested from a confluent culture flask and the cells were seeded in 6 well plates at 1 x 10⁵ cells/well and left to attach for 24 hr. The culture media were then replaced with treatment media containing free CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs at 75 and 150 µM, representing low and high treatment concentration, respectively. Controls used were untreated cells and cells treated with DMSO and CS-PEC-NPs. At time points of 24, 48, and 72 hr, cells were gently washed with PBS, thrice. Fresh PBS was added and cells were viewed under fluorescent microscope with 535-600 nm (blue) filter.

4.2.7.2 Quantitative cellular uptake

The HT-29 cells were harvested from a confluent culture flask and the cells were seeded and treated as described in section 4.2.7.1. At time points of 24, 48, and 72 hr, treatment media were aspirated and cells were gently washed with PBS. Trypsin EDTA was then added and dark incubated at 37°C for 15 min. PBS was then added and cells centrifuged at 1000 rpm for 8 min. The supernatant was then removed and cells
were lysed using methanol with vortex mixing for 1 minute. The suspension was then filtered with 0.22 µm syringe filter and the amount of CUR taken-up by the cells was quantified using the HPLC method described in chapter 3, section 3.2.3.

4.2.8 Cellular apoptosis viewed under fluorescent microscope

The HT-29 cells were harvested from T-25 tissue culture flask and seeded on cover slips fitted in 6 well plates at 1 x 10^5 cells/well and allowed to attach for 24 hr. Then the medium was aspirated and replaced with medium containing CUR-CS-PEC-NPs representing the lowest and highest effective concentration (75 µM and 150 µM, respectively) and equivalent concentrations of free CUR. Untreated cells, CS-PEC-NPs, and DMSO were used as negative control whilst 5-FU (15 µM) was used as positive control. After 24 hr of treatment, cells were fixed and stained with DAPI solution as described in section 4.2.5 and viewed under fluorescent microscope using 430-495nm (red) filter.

4.2.9 Statistical analyses

All values were expressed as mean ± SD. Statistical significance was determined by paired t-test using GraphPad® Prism 5 software, GraphPad Software Inc. Statistical significance was indicated when P-values<0.05.

4.3 Results and discussion

In this chapter, several cellular studies were conducted in an attempt to determine the efficacy as well as the selectivity of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs as anticancer agent. Free CUR was studied as well in order to compare its anticancer activity as crude drug and after encapsulation into CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. The anticancer activity of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was investigated using the MTT cell viability assay whereas its apoptotic effects were evaluated using fluorescent microscopy. Cellular uptake of CUR-CS-PEC-
NPs by cells was evaluated both qualitatively and quantitatively using fluorescent microscopy and spectrophotometric analysis, respectively.

4.3.1 Maintenance of HT-29 and MRC-5 cells

HT-29 and MRC-5 cells were maintained at standard cell culture conditions. Cells were passaged when confluency is reached every 3-4 days and 5-7 days for HT-29 and MRC-5 cells, respectively. Antibiotics were seldom used, however as precaution, at least three passages of antibiotics-free cultures were carried out before any study to avoid any interference in the obtained results. Figure 4.5 shows HT-29 (A+B) and MRC-5 (C+D) cells viewed under inverted microscope. Both cell lines images show 70% confluency, the beaming circular objects (pointed by red arrows) are floating growing cells which represents the healthiness of the passaged cells.
Figure 4.5 HT-29 cells (A,B) and MRC-5 cells (C,D) viewed under an inverted microscope under 20x and 40x magnification, respectively.

4.3.2 Mycoplasma detection

The HT-29 cells were checked for the presence of mycoplasma infection before performing the studies to exclude the possibility of data interferences. Figure 4.6 depicts cells stained with DAPI viewed under fluorescence microscope. The DAPI staining caused the cells to appear in blue and the image shows no mycoplasma.
4.3.3 Cell viability assay

We performed the MTT assay to characterize the anticancer properties of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs using human colorectal carcinoma cells HT-29. To study the selectivity of the anti-cancer activity of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs we used normal human lung fibroblasts MRC-5. HT-29 cell lines were exposed to five different concentrations of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (75-150 µM), besides equivalent concentrations of free CUR and CS-PEC-NPs. Whereas MRC-5 cells were exposed to the lowest and highest treatment concentration of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (75 and 150 µM of CUR load respectively), in addition to equivalent concentrations of free CUR and weight of void NPs (CS-PEC-NPs). The anticancer activity was inversely related to % cell viability which was measured in comparison to untreated cells. In both cell lines, 15 µM 5-FU and DMSO respectively were used as positive and negative controls. Figure 4.7 shows that CUR-CS-PEC-NPs suppressed cell proliferation in a dose- and time- dependant manner at concentrations similar to that of free CUR. However, both CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and free CUR had negligible toxicity on MRC-5 (Figure 4.8) which confirms the selectivity of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs to HT-29 cells and this can be inferred to as selectively cancer cells.

Figure 4.6 HT-29 cells viewed under fluorescence microscope with 430-495 nm filter under 20x (A) and 40x (B) magnification.
In the HT-29 cells, increasing CUR-CS-PEC-NPs concentrations caused a significant decrease in % cell viability. Cells treated with 150 µM showed less than 20% viability on days 1 and 2 and less than 12% on day 3, respectively. In contrast, 75 µM treatments showed % cell viability of 68-77% on days 1 and 2, and 64% on day 3, respectively. On day 3 a significant decrease in cell viability was observed at all concentrations. The IC\textsubscript{50} was 110 µM on days 1 and 2, while it was 90 µM on day 3.

As illustrated in Figure 4.7, there was an insignificant difference in % cell viability between and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and CUR at all concentrations for the three days of study, except for concentrations 110 and 150 µM on day 1 and 110 µM on day 3. The CS-PEC-NPs aptly showed negligible toxicity against both HT-29 and MRC-5 cells, which confirms that the carrier matrix is non-toxic. In contrast, 5-FU showed % cell viability of 43.07% ±13.79, 52.45% ±1.64, and 15.31% ± 3.59 against HT-29 cells on days 1, 2, and 3, respectively. Similar behaviour of 5-FU was observed against MRC-5 cells where % viability observed were 50.51% ±4.04, 38.06% ± 6.35, and 30.51% ± 2.11 on days 1, 2, and 3, respectively.
Figure 4.7 HT-29 cell viability after treatment with free CUR, void NPs (CS-PEC-NPs), and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs on days 1, 2, and 3 (ns: not significant; ***, p<0.001), n=5
Figure 4.8 MRC-5 cell viability after treatment with free CUR, void NPs (CS-PEC-NPs), and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs on days 1, 2, and 3, n=5
CUR is highly sensitive and vulnerable to degradation. Hence, it is crucial to ascertain whether the anticancer properties was retained after fabrication as CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. Reports on encapsulated CUR in CS/poly(butyl cyanoacrylate) NPs (Duan et al., 2010), PLGA NPs (Nair et al., 2012), CS-g-poly(N-vinylcaprolactam) NPs (Rejinold et al., 2011), β-cyclodextrin NPs (Kazemi-Lomedasht et al., 2013), and sulphate-CS NPs (Anitha et al., 2011) have shown at least similar anticancer activity of encapsulated CUR compared to free CUR. Similarly, the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs showed proportionate cytotoxic activity against HT-29 compared to free CUR, suggesting that the anticancer activity of CUR was not compromised during the nanoparticle fabrication process. On the contrary, both CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs showed no signs of toxicity against MRC-5 cells, which confirms their selectivity towards tumour cells. The CUR uptake by tumour cells was favoured over normal cells not only due to the former being leakier and larger in size, but also due to differences in membrane structure and protein composition (Anitha et al., 2011; Rejinold et al., 2011; Kunwar et al., 2008). The CS-PEC-NPs showed no toxicity against both HT-29 and MRC-5 cells, therefore, CS-PEC-NPs did not contribute to the cytotoxicity observed against HT-29 cells. We may also conclude that the carrier is safe and nontoxic to normal cells. The lack of cytotoxic behaviour of CS-NPs (Das et al., 2010; Anitha et al., 2011; Archana et al., 2013), PEC-NPs (Zhang et al., 2015), and CS-PEC-NPs (Luo & Wang, 2014; Maciel et al., 2017) have also been previously reported.

4.3.4 Morphological changes of cells by CUR-CS-PEC-NPs

To study the induction of cellular apoptosis after the various treatments, cells were examined microscopically after DAPI staining. The morphology of cells treated with CS-PEC-NPs and DMSO (Figure 4.9, B-C), respectively, depicts no signs of hindrance to cell proliferation and similar cell colonies to those observed by control
cells (Figure 4.9A). In addition, no morphological changes to the nuclei was observed, remaining spherical and shiny. This indicates that DMSO and CS-PEC-NPs do not induce apoptosis to HT-29 cells. In contrast, cells treated with equivalent high and low concentrations of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and free CUR, as well as 15 µM 5-FU showed significant changes in nuclear morphology (Figure 4.9, D-H), respectively. Apparently, there were internal deflection, fragmentation, formation of irregular edges around the nuclei. Furthermore, the cell membrane looked serrated in this treatment group, suggesting that the apoptotic effects of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, free CUR and 15 µM 5-FU were manifested in a similar manner.

Bisht et al., (2011) encapsulated CUR in polymeric NPs using N-isopropylacrylamide (NIPAAM), vinylpyrrolidone (VP), and acrylic acid (AA). The capability of free CUR and CUR-polymeric NPs to induce stellate cell apoptosis after morphological examination of the nucleus showed that the fragmentation of the nucleus was dose-dependent. Tang et al., (2010) developed CUR-polymeric conjugates as anticancer agent. The cellular apoptotic effects were studied against SKOV-3 and OVCAR-3 ovarian cancer cells and MCF-7 breast cancer cells. The nucleolus fluorescence images obtained by DAPI staining showed significant apoptosis and only few cells survived at the end of the study. Chang et al., (2013) fabricated a water soluble CUR-PLGA NPs for cancer treatment. They studied the anticancer effects of CUR-PLGA-NPs against human oral cancer, CAL27-cisplatin resistant (CAR) cells. Compared to untreated (control) cells, cells treated with CUR-PLGA-NPs showed apoptotic morphological features such as internucleosomal fragmentation under fluorescence microscopy. We may conclude that data from the above studies strongly confirms the apoptotic effects CUR is not markedly changed when fabricated in a suitable nanoformulation.
Figure 4.9 Fluorescent nuclear images of untreated cells (A), cells treated with CS-PEC-NPs (B), DMSO (C), 75 µM (D) and 150 µM (E) of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, 75 µM (F) and 150 µM (G) of free CUR, and (H) 15 µM of 5-FU. Arrows indicate fragmentation and formation of irregular edges around the nuclei.
4.3.5 Cellular uptake

Cellular uptake studies are vital in ascertaining the ability of the anticancer formulation to target cells. Capitalizing the photochemical properties of CUR, fluorescence spectroscopy was used to qualitatively evaluate the HT-29 cellular uptake of free CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. As illustrated in Figure 4.10, untreated cells and CS-PEC-NPs fluorescence images were captured as controls. Images of the cells were taken at 24-hr intervals for 72 hr. Control fluorescent microscopy images seemed dark due to the absence of fluorescence. At low CUR concentration (75 µM) both free CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, showed moderate fluorescence intensity on day 1. However, the fluorescence intensity of free CUR rapidly decreased with time that it almost diminished on day 3. However, fluorescence intensity of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, although faint, yet was more visible on days 2 and 3. This could mean that CUR-CS-PEC-NPs are more efficiently assimilated by the cells than free CUR at this concentration. This outcome explains the higher cytotoxicity of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs compared to free CUR at low concentrations on days 2 and 3 (as discussed in section 4.3.3). At both concentrations, CUR gives a green fluorescence from the entire cells which indicates cellular internalization rather than adhesion to the surface of the cells (Ha et al., 2012). Previous studies reported that CS formulated NPs distribute in the whole cells via several discrete pathways (Yun et al., 2009). The results summed up above are in concert with previous reports that indicate that encapsulating CUR in nanocarriers enhances its cellular uptake and subsequent properties (Aseh & Ríos, 2009; Liu et al., 2012). In contrast, on day 1 of high CUR concentration (150 µM) treatment, both free CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs showed highly intensive fluorescence at similar extent. However, the fluorescence intensity decreased gradually on the subsequent days, even though still visible.
Figure 4.10 Fluorescence microscopy imaging of the cellular uptake of CUR from high and low equivalent doses of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and free CUR on days 1, 2, and 3. (20x magnification).
Quantitative analyses of CUR after cellular uptake were performed spectroscopically by determining the CUR concentration from the lysed cells. Figure 4.11 shows that CUR cellular uptake was highest on day 1 followed by gradual decrease in the subsequent days. The findings of the cytotoxicity and qualitative cellular uptake studies indicated that CUR uptake by the HT-29 cells was higher from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs compared to free CUR at low concentration (75 µM) on days 2 and 3. This could be attributed to the mucoadhesive properties of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs which promoted extended contact time with the cells with subsequent release and uptake of CUR at this low concentration. There is also the possibility that intact CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were taken up as well. However, this mucoadhesive advantage was insignificant at high CUR-CS-PEC-NPs concentration which could be diminished due to the high available concentration of CUR. The quantitative cellular uptake showed similar data compared to the qualitative cellular uptake findings.
Figure 4.11 Retrieved CUR after treatment with high and low doses of free CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs on days 1, 2, and 3, n=3
NPs can be internalized within the cells via several pathways including direct penetration (Gref et al., 2000), endocytosis, enterocytosis (Jiang et al., 2008), micropinocytosis, and receptor mediated endocytosis (RME) (Alkilany & Murphy, 2010). NPs within the size range of 20-50nm are mostly taken up by nanophagocytosis, whereas nanoparticle in the range of 100-200nm are preferentially taken up by enterocytes (Froehlich, 2016).

Several physico-chemical properties such as particle size, molecular weight, particles shape (Nam et al., 2009), solubility, and surface functionality (He et al., 2010) affect the cellular uptake and intracellular trafficking of the NPs. In addition, the structural influence of the cell type also plays a role in cellular uptake (Nam et al., 2009). For example, small and uniformly sized NPs have better cellular uptake compared to larger particles (Nam et al., 2009). The surface properties of the NPs play major role in their uptake as hydrophobic and positively charged NPs show better cellular uptake (Sanjeeb et al., 2002).

In the present formulation, the small size of the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, its spherical shape and positive surface charge contributed to the high cellular uptake observed since these factors are crucial to and promote uptake into cells. Consequently, high concentrations of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs led to better cellular uptake of CUR by the HT-29 cells. However, the mucoadhesive properties of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs influenced the cellular uptake of the low initial CUR concentration, whereas at high initial CUR concentrations, the high availability of CUR had the dominant effect in the cellular uptake rather than the mucoadhesion effects. The time-dependant decrease in cellular uptake could be attributed to the degradation of CUR into smaller molecules such as trans-6-(4-hydroxy-3-methoxyphenul)-2,4-dioxo-5-hexenal, ferulic acid, feruloy methane, and vanillin which lack the auto-fluorescence properties of CUR (Ha et al., 2016).
2012) or to the efflux of CUR from the cells with time (Mulik et al., 2010). At low CUR concentration treatment at days 2 and 3, higher cellular uptake of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was obtained compared to free CUR. This could be attributed to the mucoadhesion of the NPs and to the slow release of CUR from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, similar results were obtained by Mohanty & Sahoo, (2010) where they have reported higher cellular uptake of CUR-nanoformulation compared to free CUR at low concentrations by different tumour cells. On the other hand, both CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs presented similar cellular uptake behaviour at high CUR concentration, particularly, 67.97 ± 2.09, 30.81 ± 0.30, and 11.64 ± 0.05 for CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, and 72.21± 0.79 , 37.11 ± 0.66, and 14.64 ± 0.69 for free CUR, on days 1, 2, and 3, respectively. However, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs have the added advantage of better assimilation in the cell, hence likely to result in better bioavailability at the target site than free CUR.

4.4 Conclusion

In summary, the antiproliferative effects and cellular uptake of CUR was demonstrated upon encapsulation in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. In fact, the uptake was enhanced after encapsulation, especially at lower concentrations. Morphological examination of nuclei confirmed the apoptotic properties of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. Thus far, the preceding chapters have indicated that the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs have the property of retaining their integrity when exposed to acid and alkaline milieu and release only a minimal percentage of CUR. They have also demonstrable mucoadhesive properties and release CUR more favourably in the colonic media. More importantly, the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs have demonstrable apoptotic properties comparable to that of pure CUR. On the basis of these findings, we are primed to perform an in vivo study using animal models in order to assess the bioavailability and prove the concept, to be discussed in chapter 5.
Chapter 5

Development and Validation of a HPLC Method and Pharmacokinetic Studies on CUR-CS-PEC-NPs
Development and Validation of a HPLC method and pharmacokinetic studies on CUR-CS-PEC-NPs

5.1 Introduction

5.1.1 HPLC method development and validation

HPLC is an advanced form of liquid chromatography and it is one of the most commonly used analytical techniques in new drugs and formulations development. HPLC developed analytical method should be simple, utilizes the most common stationary phases and MP, and preferably uses binary MP rather than tertiary or quaternary MP (Shabir, 2004).

The development of an HPLC analytical method comprises of the following steps: Step 1, selection of the preliminary HPLC method and the initial system based on the data available in the literature for the particular analyte (Shabir, 2004). In this step, the basic parameters are chosen, such as sample preparation, mode of chromatographic separation, type of elution (gradient/isotonic) and type of the detector (Guidelines, 2017). Step 2 entails the selection of chromatographic conditions to retain all analytes, such as the MP strength and the flow rate (Shabir, 2004). Step 3 aims to achieve the best resolution and minimum run time, hence parameters such as column dimensions, packing particle size, run time, and flow rate are optimized in this step (Guidelines, 2017). The final step, step 4, is the method validation which is performed to ascertain the reliability and reproducibility of the analytical method (Shabir, 2004; WHO, 2017).

The extent of the method validation depends on both the purpose of the analysis and to whether the HPLC method was completely developed or slightly modified from a previously validated method (WHO, 2017). Quantitative analytical methods are
validated against several parameters such as specificity, precision, linearity, accuracy, and the limit of detection (UNODC, 2009). The internal standard (IS) is commonly used in analytical methods where it is added in constant volume to both the calibration standards and samples (SW846, 2003). The calibration curve employs the ratio response of the analyte to the IS plotted against their concentrations (Dolan, 2012).

The IS is usually used in methods where multiple sample preparation steps is required and volume recovery at each step may vary (Dolan, 2012). The purposes behind using IS are to minimize the volume variations introduced into the chromatography system and minimize the response variations of the chromatography system, thus, enhancing the accuracy of the analytical method (Dolan, 2012; SW846, 2003). IS used in an analytical method should never be expected to be found in analytical samples, must be available in pure form, responsive to analytical method, have structural resemblance to the analytes, and, ideally, eluted after the analyte (Dolan, 2012; SW846, 2003).

5.1.2 In vivo pharmacokinetics studies

As discussed in chapter 1, CUR possesses a variety of therapeutic activities, including anticancer activities. However, its therapeutic usefulness is restricted due to low water solubility (Yallapu et al., 2010), extensive intestinal and hepatic metabolism, and rapid clearance, all of which results in poor bioavailability following oral administration (Cheng et al., 2013). Therefore, research has been focused on encapsulating CUR in delivery systems such as polymeric NPs (Gupta et al., 2009) with a view to addressing some of the above constraints. In general, drug delivery systems developed for enhancing the oral bioavailability of drugs, particularly hydrophobic
drugs, are evaluated through studying the pharmacokinetics behaviour of the respective
drugs using animal models (Sjödin et al., 2011; Wan et al., 2012).

Sulphasalazine (SSZ), an anti-inflammatory agent, is composed of
sulphapyridine (SP) and 5-aminosalicylic acid (5-ASA) with diazo bond linkage. Following oral administration of SSZ, a small amount of the drug is absorbed in the small intestine, whereas the majority of the dose is hydrolysed by the colonic microflora into SP and 5-ASA, where the former is completely absorbed in the colon (Gu et al., 2011). Thus, SSZ has been used as a marker drug for studying the oroceaeal transit times of dosage forms (Wong & Yuen, 2001; Björnsson & Olsson, 2005; Sunesen et al., 2005).

In pharmacokinetics and in vivo investigations, it is usually imperative to perform a pilot study on a limited number of animal models before transposing and/or fine-tuning to the study proper. It allows us to test the feasibility of methods and procedures to be used on a larger scale (Thabane et al., 2010). Pilot studies can be used to assess study procedures, estimate sampling rates, and determine study parameters, among others. In pharmacological studies, it is referred to “proof of concept” studies. Essentially, pilot studies are followed by a full and larger study to obtain clinically relevant data (Arain et al., 2010).

5.1.3 Aims and objectives

The CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were successfully formulated, characterized and studied with regard to in vitro release and mucoadhesion in Chapters 2 and 3. The anti-proliferative activities and cellular uptake of the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were further discussed in chapter 4. The data obtained so far indicates that the CUR-CS-PEC-NPs are mucoadhesive, especially in the colonic milieu whilst the physical integrity of the
particles are retained in the upper GIT. Furthermore, there is evidence that the CUR is released in colonic conditions. To investigate this hypothesis, a pilot study using rats as animal model was performed and the data obtained is discussed in detail henceforth.

Pharmacokinetic investigations rely on a credible analytical procedure able to detect plasma concentrations of drugs being analysed. Consequently, the work in this chapter was divided into two parts; i) development and validation of HPLC analytical methods for the quantitative determination of CUR and SP in plasma and ii) pharmacokinetic studies of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and SSZ-CS-PEC-NPs on animal models.

5.2 Materials and methods

5.2.1 Materials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Supplier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</td>
<td>Prepared as described in chapter 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Curcumin analytical standard</td>
<td>Fluka, USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetonitrile (HPLC grade)</td>
<td>RCI Labscan, Thailand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methanol (HPLC grade)</td>
<td>RCI Labscan, Thailand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glacial acetic acid</td>
<td>R&amp;M chemicals, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium acetate trihydrate</td>
<td>NacalaiTesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulphasalazine</td>
<td>Tokyo Chemical Industry, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piroxicam</td>
<td>NacalaiTesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17β-estradiol</td>
<td>NacalaiTesque, Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute ethanol</td>
<td>R&amp;M chemicals, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theophylline</td>
<td>R&amp;M chemicals, UK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulphasalazine</td>
<td>Tokyo Chemical Industry, Japan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.2.2 HPLC methods development and validation

5.2.2.1 HPLC instrumentation and conditions

The HPLC system comprised of a Series 200 pump, Perkin Elmer, USA equipped with UV/Vis detector (Series 200 UV/Vis detector, Perkin Elmer, USA). The stationary phase used was a RP-column ZORBAX Eclipse Plus® (C18, 250mm x 4.6 mm, 5 µm), (Agilent, USA) for both the analysis of CUR and SP.

For the CUR analyses, the method described by Heath et al. (2003) was adopted with slight modifications as follows: a 1 L MP was prepared by adding 410 ml of acetonitrile, 360 ml of water, 230 ml of methanol, and 10 ml of glacial acetic acid. The resulting mixture was vacuum filtered through 0.2 µm filter paper, thrice and run at rate of 1 ml/min on the HPLC system. The sample volume was 50 µl and the detector set at 425 nm. A 20.0 µg/ml 17-β-estradiol (EST) solution in methanol was used as the IS and deproteinising agent for the plasma samples and simultaneously detected at 262 nm.

For SP analyses, the MP comprised of 80% of acetate buffer (pH 4) and 20% Acetonitrile. Acetate buffer was prepared by mixing 847 ml of 0.1 M acetic acid and 153 ml of 0.1 M sodium acetate trihydrate (Amekyeh, 2016), the resulting mixture was then vacuum filtered with 0.2 µm filter paper, thrice. The MP was run at 1.2 ml/min and 30 µl of the sample was injected with the detector set at 260 nm. A 5 µg/ml theophylline (TP) solution in methanol was used as IS and detected at the same wavelength. The IS solution was also used as the deproteinising agent for these plasma samples.
5.2.2.2 **Plasma standards**

Stock plasma solutions containing CUR and SP at 50 µg/ml and 40 µg/ml, respectively, were prepared by spiking the appropriate amounts of the drugs solutions into appropriate volumes of the human plasma. The stock solutions were subsequently diluted with blank human plasma to prepare the calibration standards for each drug. For methods validation, three concentrations of each drug representing low (LC), mid (MC), and high (HC) concentrations. The LC, MC, HC for CUR were 0.03, 0.3, and 10 µg/ml, and for SP 0.1, 0.5, and 20 µg/ml, respectively.

5.2.2.3 **Plasma sample preparation**

The plasma samples for validation analyses were prepared by transferring 100 µl of drug-spiked plasma and 150 µl of the IS solution into microcentrifuge tubes. The tubes were vortex mixed for 2 min. and then centrifuged at 14000 rpm for 10 min. The clear supernatants were aspirated and filtered using 0.20 µm syringe filter and directly injected onto the HPLC system.

5.2.2.4 **Specificity**

The specificities of the analytical methods were based on individual observation of the chromatograms obtained for the analytes and IS prepared in appropriate solvents. A further test of specificity was based on a run of drug-free plasma and observation of the resulting chromatograms for any interferences at the retention time of the analytes or their respective IS. Finally, analytes and IS were spiked separately in plasma and their chromatographs were visually observed as before. The specificity studies are crucial in excluding peak interferences from the plasma, ascertaining that the analytes elute similarly as pure drug solutions or spiked in plasma, and that the elution of the analyte is not affected by the IS or *vice versa*. 
5.2.2.5 Linearity and range

The calibration curves for CUR and SP in drug-spiked plasma were obtained over the following concentration ranges: 0.05-10 µg/ml and 0.1-20 µg/ml, respectively. The calibration curves comprised of the ratio of the peak signal of each analyte to that of the respective IS, plotted against the respective concentration. Each analysis response represents the mean of five separate runs.

5.2.2.6 Precision

The intra-day and inter-day precision of the analyses at the three validation concentrations for each drug was determined as the reproducibility and repeatability of the developed methods. The percentage coefficient of variation (CV) was used as the mean value of five independent runs at each concentration and calculated as follows:

\[
\%CV = \frac{\text{Standard deviation (SD)}}{\text{Mean concentration}} \times 100\% \quad \text{Eq. 5.1}
\]

5.2.2.7 Accuracy

The intra-day and inter-day accuracy of the analysis at the three validation concentrations for each drug was determined to study the reliability of the results obtained from the developed method. The relative error was used as the mean value of five independent runs at each concentration and calculated as follows:

\[
\text{Relative error} = \left(\frac{\text{Mean measured concentration} - \text{True concentration}}{\text{True concentration}}\right) \times 100\% \quad \text{Eq. 5.2}
\]

5.2.2.8 Recovery

Retrieving CUR and SP from plasma samples after the extraction procedure was investigated by comparing the peak signal of each drug at the three validation concentrations from the spiked plasma samples with those obtained from pure drug...
solutions in respective solvent. The data was presented as % recovery and calculated as follows (n=5):

\[
\% \text{ Recovery} = \frac{\text{Mean concentration of drug in spiked plasma}}{\text{Mean concentration of pure drug solution}} \times 100\% \quad \text{Eq. 5.3}
\]

5.2.2.9 **Limits of detection and quantification**

The sensitivity of the developed methods were assessed in terms of LOD and LOQ and were determined by employing the lowest concentration of each analyte (LC) and calculated as follows:

\[
\text{LOD} = \frac{3 \times \text{SD of the LC}}{\text{Slope of the calibration curve}} \quad \text{Eq. 5.4}
\]

\[
\text{LOQ} = \frac{10 \times \text{SD of the LC}}{\text{Slope of the calibration curve}} \quad \text{Eq. 5.5}
\]

5.2.3 **In vivo Study**

5.2.3.1 **Preparation of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and SP-CS-PEC-NPs**

CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were prepared as discussed in section 2.2.2.2. SSZ-CS-PEC-NPs were formulated using the same procedure, however, by using the same amount of SSZ instead of CUR.

5.2.3.2 **Animals**

Pharmacokinetic studies on CUR and SSZ after oral administration of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and SSZ-CS-PEC-NPs were conducted on male Sprague-dawley rats (250 g) with prior approval by AWERB, University of Nottingham, UK, approval reference number UNMC7. The animal studies were conducted according to the requirements of the UK Animals (Scientific Procedures) Act 1986 (ASPA) draft Code of Practice for the care and accommodation of animals (February 2013) and carried out
by competent technicians. The rats were obtained from the animal holding unit of University of Science, Malaysia, Penang. The animals were acclimatized 7 days prior to the experiment under standard conditions of temperature, humidity, and light with free access to food and water. The animals were fasted overnight (12 hr). After PO treatment, water and food were allowed at 2 and 4 hr, respectively.

5.2.3.3 Procedural care of the rats

The rats were allowed to move freely in their respective cages throughout the study period. However, they were restricted in metabolic cages during the blood sampling periods. The amount and rate of samplings were limited to decrease the discomfort. The tail end of each rat was clipped only once during the initial blood sampling time. After each sampling time, the wounded tails were swabbed with cotton wool rinsed with 70% alcohol to reduce infections. Wounds were monitored for bleeding after each sampling. Water and food supply were resumed after 2 and 4 hr post-administration, respectively. At the end of the study, the rats were humanely sacrificed.

5.2.3.4 Pharmacokinetics studies

Pharmacokinetic studies were carried out to proof the concept of the colon-specific delivery of CUR in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. Sprague-dawley rats were randomly divided into three groups (n=4) receiving CUR-CS-PEC-NPs, SSZ-CS-PEC-NPs, and free CUR containing equivalent amount of drug (10 mg/kg body weight). Treatments were administered orally in 2 ml suspensions. Under topical anaesthesia, about 500 µl of blood sample were collected at predetermined time intervals (0, 1, 2, 4, 6, 8, 12, and 24 hr) from the tail into heparinized microcentrifuge tubes. The blood samples were centrifuged upon collection at 14000 rpm for 10 min. and the supernatant was aspirated.
and stored at -80°C until use. CUR and SP concentration in the supernatant were determined by HPLC methods developed in sections 5.3.2.1 and 5.3.2.2, respectively.

5.2.3.5 Data and statistical analyses

Pharmacokinetic parameters were calculated using standard model-independent pharmacokinetic formulas. The obtained plasma concentrations (ng/ml) were plotted against their respective times and the resulting curves were used to obtain the peak plasma concentration (C$_{\text{max}}$), time of occurrence (T$_{\text{max}}$), and elimination half-life (t$_{1/2}$) which was calculated as 0.693/K$_{\text{el}}$. The extent of drug absorption was measured by calculating the area under the plasma drug concentration time curve (AUC) which was calculated using log trapezoidal rule using GraphPad® Prism 5 software. Absorption rate (K$_{\text{a}}$), elimination rate (K$_{\text{el}}$) as well as the statistical analysis were calculated using GraphPad® Prism 5 software. Statistical analyses were performed using the student’s t-test where p values less than 0.01 and 0.001 are deemed as statistically significant and very statistically significant, respectively.

5.3 Results and Discussion

5.3.1 Selection of the internal standard

As discussed in section 5.1, the IS should ideally have similar solubility and chromatographic behaviour as the analyte (Dolan, 2012). In this regard, the IS should have close structural properties as the analyte. The used HPLC system (Series 200, Perkin Elmer, USA) provides simultaneous multi-wavelength detection, thus, detection of the IS at the same wavelength as the analyte was not necessary in this study.

5.3.1.1 Internal standard for CUR analysis method

IS that have been used in HPLC analyses for CUR include emodin (Han et al., 2011; Sun et al., 2013), 4-hydroxybenzophenone (Ma et al., 2007), tetra-(m-
hydrophonyl)-chlorine (Ireson et al., 2001), and EST (Heath et al., 2003a; Pak et al., 2003; Yu & Huang, 2012). Since EST was the most commonly used IS and readily available, it was chosen as the IS for this procedure.

Figure 5.1 shows a representative chromatogram of a solution containing 20 µg/ml of CUR and 10 µg/ml of EST as IS, detected at 262 nm. The retention times obtained were 6.4 and 9.4 for EST and CUR, respectively. Independent runs of EST and CUR were performed to assign the respective peaks. The chromatogram clearly shows a fairly symmetric and sharp peak of EST using the preliminary HPLC analytical method of CUR, however, optimization of the analytical method was necessary and will be discussed in section 5.3.2.

![Figure 5.1 Chromatogram for EST (10 µg/ml) and CUR (20 µg/ml)](image)

5.3.1.2 Internal standard for SP analyses method

IS that have been used in HPLC analysis of SP include benzamide (Chungi et al., 1989), caffeine (CAF) (Kasprzyk-Hordern et al., 2007; Tolika et al., 2011), sulfamethizole (Maudens et al., 2004), piroxicam (PIR) (Amekyeh et al., 2015), and dimenhydrinate (Gu et al., 2011). Amongst all, CAF and PIR were readily available and known for their simple detection with intense peak response (Tolika et al., 2011; Amekyeh, 2016). TP, up to our knowledge, has never been used as IS for SP analysis.
However, it is commonly used as IS in analytical methods, easily dissolved and detected, inexpensive, readily available (Fitzpatrick & Mcclelland, 1983; Marten et al., 2017), can be detected in short time using readily available MP (Charehsaz et al., 2014), and, most importantly, its chemical structure resembles that of SP (Figure 5.2). Therefore, CAF, PIR, and TP were initially selected as IS for this analytical method.

![Chemical structures of SP (A) and TP (B)](obtained from www.sigma-aldrich.com)

Figure 5.2 Chemical structures of SP (A) and TP (B)

Figure 5.3 shows representative chromatograms for CAF (A), PIR (B), and TP (C) at 80 µg/ml, 60 µg/ml, and 40 µg/ml respectively, under the same chromatographic conditions. The peak responses were detected at 1.86, 13.82, and 3.29 min. for CAF, PIR, and TP respectively. CAF eluted too early and likely to overlap with the plasma peaks and the response peak was relatively broad. PIR run time was too long with improper base peak. In contrary, TP response peak was sharp with suitable retention time. Hence, it was selected as the IS for SP analytical method.
Figure 5.3 Chromatograms for CAF (A), PIR (B), and TP (C) under the same HPLC conditions
5.3.2 Mobile phase composition and elution method

One of the preliminary and essential parameters in HPLC method development is choosing the elution mode, isocratic or gradient elution. If the composition and flow rate of the MP remains constant throughout the sample run, then it is referred as isocratic elution. On the other hand, changing the ration of polar to non-polar compounds in the MP during the sample run is known as gradient elution (Schellinger & Carr, 2006).

Gradient elution is usually used in analysing multi-component samples of a wide range of polarities (Barkovich, 2017; Schellinger & Carr, 2006), by which separation can be achieved in shorter run times (Barkovich, 2017). However, isocratic elution is simpler, easier to transfer between columns, instruments and laboratories (Schellinger & Carr, 2006), maintain constant flow rate and provides better reproducibility (Barkovich, 2017).

Essentially, both elution methods can be used for any sample analysis and the choice is based on the number and polarity of the sample components (Schellinger & Carr, 2006). In this study, samples will contain one component only, thus, isocratic elution was chosen for both CUR and SP analytical methods.

5.3.2.1 HPLC method for CUR determination

Heath et al. (2003b) developed an HPLC method for determination of CUR in plasma and urine using MP containing acetonitrile: methanol: de-ionized water: acetic acid at ratio 41:23:36:1, respectively. 20µl of samples containing EST as the IS were injected onto the HPLC system. The MP was run at 1 ml/min and samples detected at 262 nm.
Based on the aforementioned conditions, a preliminary run of 20 µg/ml CUR and 10 µg/ml EST as IS solution in methanol was performed under the same conditions. Figure 5.4 shows the chromatogram obtained where both EST and CUR peaks appear sharp and fairly symmetric at 6.38 and 9.32 min., respectively.

Figure 5.4 Chromatograms for EST and CUR using Heath et al. (2003b) method

Although the peaks obtained by Heath et al. (2003b) method were sharp, resolved, and fairly symmetric, the sensitivity of the detector to CUR was poor. It must be added that it is not very crucial if the sensitivity of the detector to the IS is not high because that can be compensated by using a higher concentration. From a prior UV scan, we are aware that CUR absorb at maximum at 435 nm. Therefore, sample run was detected simultaneously at two separate wavelengths of 262 nm and 425 nm. Chromatograms obtained (Figure 5.5) clearly shows a more intense detector response to CUR, however, EST peak was not detectable at 425 nm. Since the HPLC instrument is capable of simultaneously detecting samples at multi-wavelengths without the need to re-run the samples, both wavelengths 262 nm and 425 nm were subsequently used for detecting EST and CUR, respectively. Detecting the IS at different wavelength of the analyte was previously reported (Pak et al., 2003), where the IS (EST) and CUR were detected at 280 nm and 430 nm, respectively.
5.3.2.2  

**HPLC method for SP determination**

The HPLC method for SP determination was developed based on Amekyeh *et al.* (2015) method for the determination of SP along with amphotericin B and paracetamol. In Amekyeh *et al.* (2015) method, gradient elution of the MP comprised of Acetate buffer (pH 4) and acetonitrile, SP was detected at 254 nm.

Preliminary runs comprised of three samples of 40 µg/ml SP dissolved in the following solvents: (i) DMSO: methanol, 1:1, (ii) methanol, and (iii) acetate:methanol, 1:1. A 30 µl aliquot of the samples were injected into the HPLC system and the MP was run at 1 ml/min and SP detected at 254 nm. The MP comprised of [A] acetate buffer (pH 4), and [B] acetonitrile, with isocratic elution was used and the ratios of A to B was varied between 60-90:40-10 for each of the 3 samples. Optimum analyte peak in terms of shape and retention time was achieved at the MP ratio of 70:30 with methanol (ii) as solvent. Figure 5.6 shows the chromatogram obtained from 40 µg/ml SP dissolved in methanol where, the peak was eluted at 3.83 min. Thus, these chromatographic conditions were selected for further optimization of the analytical method.
A mixture of 20 μg/ml SP and 5 μg/ml TP as IS was run using the aforementioned method, however, unresolved peaks with high noise was obtained (Figure 5.7A), hence, the analytical method was further optimized with MP ratio set at 80:20 (acetate buffer at pH 4 : acetonitrile), flow rate 1.2 ml/min and detection wavelength 260 nm. Figure 5.7B illustrates the resulting chromatogram showing distinctive and fairly symmetric peaks of both SP and TP eluted at 3.00 and 5.07 min, respectively. The optimized chromatographic conditions were further selected for subsequent work.
5.3.3 Effects of the plasma and the deproteinising agent on peak resolution and symmetry

Precipitation of protein is essential in excluding artefacts and interferences from biological samples in analytical work (Daykin et al., 2002). It is the most commonly used method due to its simplicity and ability to denature protein and destroy its drug binding ability (Polson et al., 2003). Protein solubility in biological fluids is attributed to its hydrophilic surface and ionic interactions (Chang et al., 2007) and to the repulsive electronic forces between similarly charged molecules. At the isoelectric point (pI) proteins become insoluble due to the lack of a net charge (Polson et al., 2003).

The goal of protein precipitation is essentially to decrease its solubility by direct and indirect interactions between the deproteinizing agent and protein moieties (Chang et al., 2007). A vast array of methods have been used for protein precipitation such as...
pH adjustment, addition of salts, ultrafiltration (Daykin et al., 2002), use of strong acids or basis (Chamberlain, 1995) and thermal precipitation (Burgess, 2009). However, the drawbacks of these methods are their potentially degradative effects on the analyte and the possibility of the analyte becoming trapped in protein aggregates (Chang et al., 2007).

Organic solvents such as acetone, ethanol, and acetonitrile have been used for decades as deproteinizing agents (Burgess, 2009). They decrease the dielectric constant of the plasma protein solubility, displace the water molecules on the protein surface, thus decreasing its hydrophobic interaction and eventually leading to protein precipitation (Polson et al., 2003).

Protein precipitation using organic solvents is an easy, simple, and fast method that can be used for a wide range of applications. In addition, these agents are volatile and can be used as MP (Sedgwick et al., 1991). The type and amount of the organic solvent determine the protein precipitation efficiency (Chang et al., 2007). Another concern with regard to the use of deproteinizing agents is that if they are markedly different from the MP, there could be a transient modification to the MP at the time of injection and this can perturb the elution dynamics of the analyte. The most preferable practice is using the MP as the deproteinizing agent and its addition to the IS solution as this would cause only a nuanced change in MP composition when injected.

In this study, the MP described in sections 5.3.2.1 and 5.3.2.2 were used both as deproteinizing agents and solvents for the IS in CUR and SP analytical methods, respectively. However, modifications to the peak such as broadening, baseline bias and tailing were observed (Figure 5.8). The MP were thus substituted with methanol (Figure 5.9) where peaks clearly appear well resolved, sharp, fairly symmetrical, on the
baseline, and without splitting. Thus, methanol was used subsequently both as the deproteinizing agent and solvent for the IS. Using different solvents as deprotenizing agents and solubilizing the IS would result in analytes dilution in the plasma samples, this effect was avoided in this study while effective protein precipitation was maintained.

Figure 5.8 Chromatograms of CUR (A) and SP (B) and their respective IS using the MP as deproteinizing agent
Figure 5.9 Chromatograms of CUR (A) and SP (B) and their respective IS using methanol as deproteinizing agent

5.3.4 HPLC method validation

A number of HPLC methods for the detection of CUR and suitable IS in biological fluids have been reported (Yang et al., 2005; Gou et al., 2011; Wan et al., 2012; Khatik et al., 2013; Anitha et al., 2014). In general, SP is detected using complex methods simultaneously with other sulphonamides (Maudens et al., 2004; Gu et al., 2011; Tolika et al., 2011). In the present study, two separate methods for analyses of CUR and SP, which would be suitable for the bioavailability studies of CUR using SP as a marker drug, were developed. EST and TP were used as the IS for the CUR and
SP analytical methods, respectively. The results of the method validation parameters for CUR and SP are summarized in Tables 5.1 and 5.2, respectively.

5.3.4.1 Specificity

The specificity is one of the firstly checked and most crucial validation parameter in analytical method development to ascertain that the analytical method is specific to the particular analytes. In this regard, individual drugs and their respective IS were injected onto the HPLC system separately to obtain the individual retention times to assign each peak. The MP compositions, simple isocratic elution method, and the RP- ZORBAX Eclipse Plus® column (C18, 250 mm x 4.6 mm, 5 µm) were suitable for the determination methods of CUR and SP. Figure 5.10 illustrates the chromatograms obtained when pure drug solutions containing identical concentrations (22.0 µg/ml each) of CUR and EST (IS) (A), and SP and TP (IS) (B) were injected on the system.

The retention times obtained were 7.21 and 10.98 min. for EST and CUR, respectively, and 3.58 and 7.26 min. for TP and SP, respectively. The chromatograms obtained show low baseline noise and no interfering peaks which reflects the specificity of the methods for the analytes.
Figure 5.10 Chromatograms of pure solutions of CUR and EST (A) and SP and TP (B).

5.3.4.2 Effect of plasma (matrix effect)

Injecting blank plasma onto the HPLC system showed low baseline noise and no interfering peaks at the retention times for CUR (Figure 5.11A) at both studied wavelengths and for SP (Figure 5.11B) as well as their respective IS, further confirming the specificity of the HPLC analytical methods.
Figure 5.11 Chromatograms of the methanolic extract of blank human plasma using CUR (A) and SP (B) analytical methods

Plasma samples spiked with the analytes and IS, treated as described in section 5.3.3 and injected onto the HPLC system produced the chromatograms shown in Figures 5.12A for CUR and Figure 5.12B for SP and their respective IS. The figure clearly shows that the peaks for all drugs maintained their resolution and symmetry in plasma, with slight increases in the retention times of some of the analytes compared with the respective peaks obtained from the pure drug solutions in Figure 5.10. Particularly, the retention times of CUR, which increased from 10.98 to 11.19 at 262 and 425 nm, whereas EST retention time increased from 7.21 to 7.26 at 262 nm. However, no change in retention times was observed for TP and SP. The peaks in
Figure 5.12 were obtained by spiking solutions of the analytes into plasma to the same analyte concentrations in solution as in Figure 5.10. Differences in the peak response (absorption) was observed in CUR and SP peaks at 425 and 260 nm, respectively. Particularly, CUR and SP absorption increased from 600 to 700 mAU and from 175 to 250 mAU at 425 and 260 nm, respectively. This is attributable to the plasma matrix effect and it shows that it varies for different analytes. However, this difference was consistent for all of the subsequent plasma analyses and therefore inconsequential.

Figure 5.12 Chromatograms for spiked plasma showing CUR and EST (22.0 µg/ml, each) (A) and SP and TP (22.0 µg/ml, each)
HPLC is a powerful, sensitive and reproducible analytical technique used for the quantitative determination of drugs and their metabolites in biological fluids. However, one of the major challenges in bioanalytical method development is the “matrix effect” (Mei et al., 2003). “Matrix” refers to all components in the sample other than the analytes of interest (Trufelli et al., 2011). Body fluids are complex matrices that comprise of various compounds (Lagerwerf et al., 2000). These fluids include blood, urine, bile, faeces, and tissue samples and the effects of these matrices may vary among individuals (Hall et al., 2012).

The matrix effect may compromise the reproducibility, accuracy, and linearity of the bioanalytical methods (Trufelli et al., 2011). The co-eluting molecules may cause suppression or enhancement of the analytes signals compared to the matrix-free samples (Stüber & Reemtsma, 2004; Taylor, 2005).

The exact mechanism by which the matrix effect manifests is not well understood, however, it is believed that the co-eluting matrix compete with the analytes of interest on the stationary phase, hence, influences the signal intensity (Taylor, 2005; Trufelli et al., 2011). The majority of plasma components are water-soluble, thus, highly polar analytes are generally affected at greater extent compared to non-polar analytes (Taylor, 2005; Hall et al., 2012). This was manifested in the present study where SP was the most effected analyte.

The matrix effect can arise from various matrix components including endogenous biological components such as carbohydrates, phospholipids, and residual formulation components (Hall et al., 2012). Thus, the Sprague-Dawley rats used in the present study had not been used prior to this project and were not subjected to any drug substance prior to the study. Furthermore, they were fasted before the study.
The matrix components such as salts, amines, triglycerides, and fatty acids, among others, that contribute in the matrix effect can be reduced by diluting their amount in plasma, however, this further dilutes the analytes of interest (Stüber & Reemtsma, 2004). Other approaches to remove matrix components during the sample clean-up process are protein precipitation, liquid-liquid extraction, and solid phase extraction (Lagerwerf et al., 2000). The usage of IS also helps in minimizing the matrix effect which was employed in this study (Mei et al., 2003).

The results obtained so far clearly showed that the developed HPLC methods were suitable for the assay of CUR and SP along with their respective IS, in the presence or absence of the biological matrix, plasma.

5.3.4.3 Linearity and range

The linearity of the method was assessed based on the coefficient of correlation between peak response and analyte concentration over the working drug concentration ranges. Figure 5.13 illustrates the calibration curves for CUR and SP in plasma; both calibration curves are linear over the concentration ranges of 0.05-10 µg/ml and 0.1-20 µg/ml, respectively. The coefficients of determination were 1 and 0.9999, respectively, indicating good linearity in both analytical methods.

Shaikh et al. (2009); Wan et al. (2012); Khatik et al. (2013) studied the pharmacokinetics of CUR after oral administration of CUR formulations at doses 10-100 mg/kg which resulted in C_{max} values of 0.08-0.5 µg/ml. Whereas doses of 20 mg/kg of SSZ produced C_{max} values of SP ranging 0.15-4.76 µg/ml (Bates et al., 1977; Sjödin et al., 2011; Zamek-Gliszczynski et al., 2012). In the present study, 10 mg/kg doses of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and SSZ-CS-PEC-NPs were orally administered to the rats. Based
on the aforementioned data, the concentrations ranges were selected to be suitable for the plasma detection of the analytes in rat plasma.
Figure 5.13 Standard calibration curves of the peak response ratios of analyte to IS versus the corresponding concentration of CUR (A) and SP (B) in human plasma.
5.3.4.4 Precision

The precision reflects the closeness of individual measures of an analyte when the analytical method is applied repeatedly and is represented as %CV (WHO, 2017). The intra-day precision determines the precision during a single analytical run (under the same conditions), whereas the inter-day precision assesses precision with time and may involve different equipment, reagents, laboratories, and analysts. The intra-day precision assessment gave values of 1.29-1.90% for CUR and 1.58-10.51% for SP. On the other hand, the inter-day evaluation were 1.05-9.66% for CUR and 1.16-9.81 for SP. The precision (%CV) must ideally be less than 15% at all concentrations except for the LC where it should not exceed 20% (WHO, 2017). Based on the aforementioned data, the maximum value of precision was 10.51%, which indicates an acceptable degree of variation in both analytical methods.

The analytical methods for determination of CUR developed by Han et al. (2011); Heath et al. (2003b); Sun et al. (2013) produced maximum intra-day precision values of 12.0%, 6.2%, and 5.33%, respectively, and maximum inter-day precision values of 3.77%, 13.9%, and 5.33%, respectively. For SP, Intra-day and inter-day precision were in the ranges of 2.2-9.2% and 2.17-8.4%, respectively. The data from this study are either tantamount or even better than those obtained in the aforementioned studies.

5.3.4.5 Accuracy

The accuracy of an analytical procedure is a measure of the closeness between the actual and expected concentrations of an analyte and is represented as percentage relative error (Shabir, 2004). The relative error for this study were in the ranges 2.09-12.90% for CUR and 1.91-7.70% for SP, and 2.82-10.87% for CUR and 1.36-8.86%
for SP, in the intra-day and inter-day accuracy precision assessments, respectively. The relative error value should ideally be a maximum of 15% and 20% for HC and MC, and LC, respectively (Shabir, 2004). As all of the accuracy results in this study are below 15%, this indicates that both of the analytical methods are of acceptable accuracy. The accuracy values reported in the literature were in the range of 1.2-12.7% and 2.0-6.6% for CUR (Heath et al., 2003b; Pak et al., 2003; Han et al., 2011) and SP (Maudens et al., 2004; Gu et al., 2011), respectively.

The data obtained from the precision and accuracy assessments show that both of the developed analytical methods for the determination of CUR and SP are repeatable and reproducible.

5.3.4.6 Recovery

The recovery of an analyte from a biological fluid against a biological matrix is crucial in choosing analytical procedure. The recovery is measured as the ratio of the peak response obtained of the analyte spiked in plasma, compared to that obtained of the same amount of analyte in pure solution (UNODC, 2009). For CUR, the recovery values obtained were 91.81, 96.53, 93.07% for LC, MC, and HC, respectively. For SP, the recovery values were 87.83, 103.74, and 89.91% for LC, MC, and HC, respectively. The data obtained shows maximum 12% matrix effect in the quantification of the analytes at all concentrations. Since the % recovery should ideally be in the range of 85-115%, the above data confirms good analyte recoveries in both analytical methods. The mean recoveries reported in the literature were in the range of 82.9-112.0% for CUR (Heath et al., 2003b; Han et al., 2011) and 87.0-96.0% for SP (Kasprzyk-Hordern et al., 2007; Gu et al., 2011). The recoveries values obtained in the present study are
comparable to those reported in the literature and this confirms the suitability of the developed methods for the determination of CUR and SP in plasma.

5.3.4.7 LOD and LOQ

LOD refers to the smallest concentration of an analyte that can be detected but not necessarily quantified. Whereas LOQ is the smallest concentration of analyte that can be quantified with acceptable accuracy and precision. LOD and LOQ are estimated to be three and ten times the noise level, respectively (Shrivastava & Gupta, 2011). LOD and LOQ were 0.5 ng/ml and 1.93 ng/ml for CUR and 73.10 ng/ml and 243.68 ng/ml for SP, respectively. Other LOD and LOQ values from the literature are 27.99-90.00 ng/ml and 2.50-84.84 ng/ml, respectively, for CUR (Heath et al., 2003a; Jadhav et al., 2007; Wichitnithad et al., 2009) and 50 ng/ml and 10-20 ng/ml, respectively, for SP (Kaspryzk-Hordern et al., 2007; Gu et al., 2011). The LOD and LOQ values obtained in this study are either comparable or better than those reported in the literature. A low LOQ indicates that very low concentrations of the analyte can be detected and therefore give more credence to the procedure compared to methods with higher LOQ. The LOQ values should be lower than the expected analyte concentration at the first and last blood sampling in oral pharmacokinetics studies. A search through the literature revealed that CUR concentrations between 10-80 ng/ml occurs at the first blood sampling of a 10-100 mg/kg oral dosing (Yang et al., 2007; Li et al., 2009; Wan et al., 2012; Khatik et al., 2013). Likewise, SP concentrations of 80-100 ng/ml is produced at 20 mg/ml oral doses of sulfasalazine (Sjödin et al., 2011; Zamek-Gliszczyński et al., 2012). Based on the aforementioned studies, we may conclude that the LOQ values obtained in this study are suitable for the detection and quantification of CUR and SP following oral administration of 10 mg/kg for each.
Table 5.1 Summary of HPLC method validation parameters for CUR (MP: 41:36:23:1 acetonitrile: water: methanol: glacial acetic acid, detected at 425 nm and 262 nm for CUR and EST, respectively)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Concentration (µg/ml)</th>
<th>Intra-day</th>
<th>Inter-day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Precision (%CV)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>1.63</td>
<td>1.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>9.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>1.80</td>
<td>2.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accuracy (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>11.07</td>
<td>10.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>15.34</td>
<td>8.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>5.44</td>
<td>2.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>92.04 ± 5.20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>96.54 ± 1.62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC</td>
<td>10.00</td>
<td>93.07 ± 1.44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensitivity</td>
<td>LOD</td>
<td>0.50 ng/ml</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LOQ</td>
<td>1.93 ng/ml</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linearity Range</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.05-10.00 µg/ml</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5.2 Summary of HPLC method validation parameters for SP (MP: 80:20 acetate buffer (pH 4): Acetonitrile, detected at 260 nm)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Concentration (µg/ml)</th>
<th>Intra-day</th>
<th>Inter-day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Precision (%CV)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>10.51</td>
<td>9.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>2.29</td>
<td>2.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>1.58</td>
<td>1.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accuracy (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>2.65</td>
<td>3.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>7.70</td>
<td>8.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>1.91</td>
<td>1.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery (%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>90.22 ± 15.85</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>105.48 ± 15.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC</td>
<td>20.00</td>
<td>90.10 ± 7.80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensitivity</td>
<td>LOD</td>
<td>73 ng/ml</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LOQ</td>
<td>243 ng/ml</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linearity Range</td>
<td>0.05-10.0 µg/ml</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.3.5 *In vivo* Pharmacokinetics studies

5.3.5.1 Selection of animal model

Small animals such as mice, rats, guinea pigs, and rabbits are more suitable for conducting drug absorption and bioavailability studies of powder or solution formulations, whereas larger animals such as dogs, pigs, and monkeys are more suitable to assess other types of formulations (Kararli, 1995). Rats share remarkable expression of anatomical and physiological features of the GIT to that of humans (Kararli, 1995).
Using rats in biological studies possess numerous advantages such as their suitable size which is important during handling and blood sampling, feasible cost (Lannaccone & Jacob, 2009), and a large volume of historical safety data in the use of rats for biological studies (Tometry, 2017). Thus, rats have been commonly used as animal model for determining drug absorption and bioavailability in various formulations, including nanoparticulate formulations (Girard et al., 1987; Srinivasan & Iversen, 1995; Poulin & Theil, 2002; Kalaria et al., 2009). A search through the literature has revealed that rats have been used in pharmacokinetics studies on CUR encapsulated in PLGA-NPs (Shaikh et al., 2009; Khalil et al., 2013), monomethoxy poly(ethyleneglycol)-poly(ε-caprolactone) micelles (Gou et al., 2011), self-emulsifying liquid and pellet formulations (Setthacheewakul et al., 2010), and CS-poly(butyl cyanoacrylate) NPs (Duan et al., 2010). In the present study, male Sprague-Dawley rates were selected due to the fact that male rats are less prone to hormonal changes than female rats. Hormonal changes can affect physiological modalities that can affect pharmacokinetic profiles (Zhou et al., 2002; Roehr, 2007).

5.3.5.2 Pharmacokinetics studies

Despite the potent anti-proliferative activity of CUR and its low toxicity, its use as an anticancer agent has been restricted due to its poor absorption and poor bioavailability. Therefore, we have formulated a nanoparticulate delivery system with a resoluteness to improve the oral bioavailability and efficiently deliver CUR to the colon. CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and free CUR were orally administered at 10 mg/ml to monitor the pharmacokinetics properties for 24 hr. CUR is water insoluble and easily hydrolysed in the physiological conditions, thus, SSZ-CS-PEC-NPs were administered orally at the same dose as marker in estimating the drug for the orocaecal transit time of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs.
Prior to administration, the SSZ-CS-PEC-NPs were characterized in terms of particle size and zeta potential and EE% as described in sections 2.1.4 and 3.2.5, respectively to ensure the parity between the physical characteristics of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and SSZ-CS-PEC-NPs. The particle size and zeta potential were $326.50 \pm 5.6$ and $21.7 \pm 0.8$, respectively for SSZ-CS-PEC-NPs however, the EE% was $21.0\% \pm 3.1\%$. A review of the literature revealed seldom encapsulation of SSZ in polymeric NPs due to its relatively good bioavailability following oral administration (Amekyeh et al., 2015) and is reported to manifest low EE% (Lamprecht et al., 2000; Tavakol et al., 2013) which could be attributed to its hydrophobic nature. In this study, no SP was detected at any time during the 24hr study period, which could be due to the low EE% of SSZ-CS-PEC-NPs. The SP detection and quantification in the plasma would have provided more information about the \textit{in vivo} behaviour of the CS-PEC-NPs, but nonetheless, CUR was detected and statistically significant data were collected and discussed below for the proof of concept.

One rat from the free CUR group was excluded after 2 hr of the study due to insufficient blood samples volume and discomfort observed in this rat. The relevant pharmacokinetic parameters including $C_{\text{max}}$, $T_{\text{max}}$, $AUC_{0-\infty}$, and $t_{1/2}$ for CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and free CUR are summarized in Table 5.3.
Table 5.3 Pharmacokinetic studies of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and free CUR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pharmacokinetic parameters</th>
<th>CUR-CS-PEC-NPs</th>
<th>Free CUR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$C_{\text{max}}$ (ng/ml)</td>
<td>1000.57 ± 15.23</td>
<td>704.67 ± 73.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$T_{\text{max}}$ (hr)</td>
<td>5.65 ± 0.51</td>
<td>1.35 ± 0.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$K_a$ (hr)</td>
<td>0.91 ± 0.12</td>
<td>0.45 ± 0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$K_{\text{el}}$ (hr)</td>
<td>0.04 ± 0.01</td>
<td>0.16 ± 0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$AUC_{0-\text{t}}$ (ng hr/ml)</td>
<td>4479.50 ± 137.00</td>
<td>2181.91 ± 195.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$AUC_{0-\infty}$ (ng hr/ml)</td>
<td>10041.95 ± 1859.78</td>
<td>2397.97 ± 216.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$t_{1/2}$ (hr)</td>
<td>17.65 ± 1.40</td>
<td>4.88 ± 0.19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The mean CUR concentration in the serum after oral administration of both CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and free CUR are illustrated in Figure 5.14. Maximum serum availability of CUR is 704.677 ± 15.230 (ng/ml) and 1000.571 ± 73.176 (ng/ml) were observed after 30 min. and 6 hr of free CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs administration, respectively. This short $C_{\text{max}}$ observed from CUR suspension is attributable to the readily availability of free CUR for immediate absorption from the upper digestive tract, whilst CUR encapsulated in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was at most available for absorption in the later part of the GIT. A higher $AUC_{0-\infty}$ value was observed in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (10041.946 ± 1859.783) compared to free CUR (2397.974 ± 216.074) suggesting that the formulation aids in a better bioavailability of CUR than when administered alone. Unlike free CUR, higher concentration of CUR was detected at 24 hr.
Figure 5.14 Plasma concentration profile of CUR in rats after the oral administration of equivalent doses of free CUR (n=3) and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs (n=4). (significant is identified with respect to free CUR *p<0.01, **p<0.001)

Shaikh et al., (2009) encapsulated CUR in PLGA-NPs to enhance the oral bioavailability of CUR. After oral administration of 100mg/Kg of CUR-PLGA-NPs and 250 mg/Kg of CUR suspension, values of C\text{max}(ng/ml), T\text{max}(hr), and AUC\text{0-\infty}(ng/ml.hr) obtained from CUR-PLGA-NPs were 260.50 ± 26.40 ng/ml, 2.00 hr, and 3224.00 ng/ml.hr ± 329.00 and from CUR suspension were 90.3 ± 15.50 ng/ml, 0.50 hr, and 312.00 ng/ml.hr, respectively. Thus, as in the present study, improved oral bioavailability was observed when CUR was encapsulated in PLGA-NPs. In another study, Khalil et al., (2013) fabricated CUR-PLGA-NPs to enhance its oral bioavailability. After oral administration of the nanoparticulate system at 50mg/kg, enhanced absorption of CUR from CUR-PLGA-NPs was observed as the reported C\text{max} of the latter was 11.78 ± 0.454 ng/ml compared to 4.06 ± 0.564 ng/ml obtained from CUR suspension. In addition, T\text{max} values were increased up to four folds in CUR-PLGA-NPs compared to CUR suspension. Khatik et al., (2013) studied the pharmacokinetics behaviour of CUR-Eudragit-CS-NPs compared to free CUR. In the
study, significant enhancement in CUR absorption and oral bioavailability after its encapsulation was observed. Reported $C_{\text{max}}$ and $AUC_{0-\infty}$ values were 904.74 ± 38.46 ng/ml and 16906.62 ± 103.87 ng/ml.hr of the NPs compared to 514.12 ± 14.09 ng/ml and 4722.55 ± 76.98 ng/ml.hr of free CUR, respectively. The pharmacokinetics data obtained from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs in this study were either comparable or even better than those reported in the literature which indicates enhanced oral bioavailability and successful delivery of CUR to the colon. In view of the fact that the CUR-CS-PEC-NP were designed to be delivered to the colon, we envisage that this is manifested *in vivo* and that absorption proper of CUR occurs at this site of the GIT. Therefore, in the event of a colorectal cancer therapy, we believe that this delivery system has a promising outlook for a favourable therapy.

5.4 Conclusion

In the first part of this chapter, simple, rapid, accurate, reproducible, and reliable HPLC methods for the determination and quantification of CUR and SP in plasma using EST and TP as IS, respectively, were developed and validated. The peaks for all of the analytes were well resolved in a relatively short run time (<10 min. for each). The volume of plasma used was appropriate for pharmacokinetic studies in rats. In the second part of this chapter, we discussed pharmacokinetics studies of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and free CUR after oral administration in rats. Our findings reflect a successful delivery of CUR to the colon with increased oral absorption and bioavailability of CUR with time as observed for 24 hr. In contrast, lower bioavailability of free CUR was observed, possibly as a result of rapid metabolism of free CUR. The CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were developed to specifically deliver CUR to the colon without being degraded by the onslaught effects of the upper digestive tract and we believe that this is realised *in vivo* so that the high bioavailability observed from CUR-CS-PEC-NPs is due to
delivery to the colon followed by absorption. Thus, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs might serve as a suitable delivery system for CUR to the colon in which CUR will be available on site for its chemotherapeutic activity and induction of apoptosis in tumour cells.
Chapter 6

Conclusion and Future Work
6 Conclusion and future work

6.1 Conclusion

Despite the extensive research in trying to fully understand the manifestation of carcinogenesis as well as intensive research in the provision of a framework for the prevention and treatment of the disease, cancer remains one of the most challenging and complex causes of mortality around the world with ever increasing prevalence (Johnson & Mukhtar, 2007). The two major challenges in the management of cancer treatment are: (i) non-selectivity in the treatment whereby all tissues are a target for a viable formulation and (ii) the constraint of needing to overcome the biological barriers that hinders the effectiveness of the cancer therapeutic (Ferrari, 2005). In order to avoid the side effects that arise from (i) there is a move towards the use of natural chemotherapeutic agents derived from plant sources such as CUR, whose anticancer potential is unquestionable and has been extensively reviewed in Chapter 1 of this thesis. Despite this potential, the use of CUR as anticancer agent is somewhat curtailed due to its poor biopharmaceutical properties comprising of low water solubility, low oral bioavailability, extensive metabolism, and rapid elimination rates (Yallapu et al., 2012; Naksuriya et al., 2014). In the present study, we have successfully fabricated CUR-containing mucoadhesive nanoparticulate delivery system with demonstrable potential for the treatment of colorectal cancer. In a further project from the present work, we aim to use biodegradable excipients so that reported toxicity of the “courier” system can be minimised.

The use of a simple and non-toxic ionic gelation technique, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were successfully prepared. The optimized formulation has mean particle size of 200.6 nm (±6.6 nm) and zeta potential of +32.8 mV (±0.5 mV). The size of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was suitable for delivery to the colorectal tumour, whereas the zeta potential
reflected a considerably stable formulation. The SEM images showed spherical and well-separated NPs with sizes in agreement with those obtained from the photon correlation analysis. FT-IR, DSC, and XRD analyses confirmed the encapsulation of CUR onto the CS-PEC-NPs in its inactive, amorphous phase.

The mucoadhesive propensities of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were confirmed and mainly attributed to the ionic interaction between the positively charged CUR-CS-PEC-NPs and negatively charged mucin. The EE% of the freshly prepared CUR-CS-PEC-NPs was found to be 64% (±1.40 %) where cumulative release of 86% of CUR was observed after 7 hr of the study in gastrointestinal simulated fluids. Stability studies showed “fair” storage stability of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs as well as the protection of CUR against thermal- and photo-degradation.

*In vitro* cellular studies confirmed that CUR retained its antiproliferative properties against colorectal cancer cell line HT-29 after encapsulation in CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. The safety and selectivity of the formulation as well as free CUR were confirmed. CUR-CS-PEC-NPs showed less than 65% and 12% cell viability at lowest and highest treatment doses, respectively, after three days of cell viability study. The cellular apoptosis effects of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs were confirmed via fluorescent nuclear images whereas quantitative and qualitative cellular uptake studies demonstrated considerable uptake of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs by colorectal cancer cell line HT-29.

A simple, sensitive, accurate, and reproducible HPLC analytical procedure was developed for the quantitative determination of CUR and SP using suitable IS for each and validated in human plasma for subsequent *in vivo* analyses. The methods required a small volume of plasma, which makes them applicable for pharmacokinetics studies in rats. A proof of concept study was conducted to evaluate the pharmacokinetics of
CUR-CS-PEC-NPs. Enhanced oral absorption and bioavailability as well as decreased elimination rate of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs compared to free CUR. The concentration-time profile indicates successful delivery of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs to the colon.

In conclusion, successful fabrication of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs with mucoadhesive propensities resulted in enhancing the oral bioavailability of CUR as well as its targeted delivery to the colon whilst retaining its antiproliferative efficiency. The formulation tends to be selective against tumour cells. Therefore, CUR-CS-PEC-NPs is a promising potential nanoformulation for the treatment of colorectal cancer.
6.2 Suggestions for future work

The research on enhancing the oral bioavailability of CUR and its delivery to the target site using nanoparticulate delivery systems is winning growing interest. CUR-CS-PEC-NPs developed in this study shows promising data for future clinical translation. To reach that point, a few suggestions for future work are discussed below.

High EE% of a formulation provides higher payload of the drug using the same amount of the carrier. The EE% of the current formulation can be enhanced by increasing the initial concentration of the drug, this might require modification of the nanoparticulate system to attain higher drug loading while maintaining its physico-chemical properties. Other approaches for increasing the EE% include increasing working pH, using pH-responsive excipients such as lauric acid, caprylic acid, and poly(methyl methacrylate-co-methacrylic acid) (PMMA-MAA) (Hans & Lowman, 2002), and the addition of co-polymers such as pluronic F127 (Das et al., 2010).

In general, the storage stability of the polymeric NPs is one of the major hurdles which might regressively effect its development, which is applicable to this formulation as well (Wu et al., 2011). Strategies for improving nanoparticulate shelf-life including the use of stabilizers such as polyethylene glycol (PEG), poly(vinylalcohol) (PVA), and poly(L-lysine) (PLL), however, using them might cause toxicity issues (Wu et al., 2011). Safer strategies include freeze drying of the NPs with the use of suitable cryoprotectant such as sucrose and trehalose and the formulation of the nanoparticles with higher zeta potential (Shaikh et al., 2009).

The in vivo studies have undoubtedly proven the enhanced oral bioavailability and pharmacokinetics behavior of CUR upon its encapsulation in CS-PEC-NPs.
However, other in vivo evaluation would help to better understand the fate of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs such as Gamma Scintigraphy and histological analyses.

Certainly, cellular studies confirmed the anticancer efficiency of both free CUR and CUR-CS-PEC-NPs against colorectal cancer cells. However, their effects were evaluated against one cell line only, HT-29, evaluation using other colorectal cancer cell lines such as SW1417, SW480, DLD-1, and HCT-15 would represent more information about CUR-CS-PEC-NPs efficiency against various colorectal cancer types with different gene expressions. Moreover, in vivo anticancer evaluation of CUR-CS-PEC-NPs is necessary as the obtained in vitro data, although provides basic indication, does not necessarily represent the in vivo anticancer behavior of the formulation. In such evaluations, human cancer xenograft can be established in animal modules and the anticancer effects of the formulation can be subsequently assessed via in vivo imaging and measuring the change in the tumour volume.
LIST OF PUBLICATIONS FROM THE PRESENT WORK


References


ATCC. (2017b). MRC-5. Available at: https://www.atcc.org/~ps/CCL-171.ashx

ATCC. (2017c). MTT Cell Proliferation Assay. ATCC. https://doi.org/ATCC 30-1010K


Avadi, R., Sadeghi, M., Mohammadpour, N., Abedin, S., Atyabi, F., Dinarvand, R., &


Bhatta, S., Chandasana, H., Chhonker, S., Rathi, C., Kumar, D., Mitra, K., & Shukla, K. (2012). Mucoadhesive nanoparticles for prolonged ocular delivery of


Bornstein, A., Recht, A., Connolly, L., Schnitt, J., Cady, B., Koufman, C., & Harris, J.


WHO media center. (2014). *Available at: www.who.org*


Coradini, K., Lima, O., Oliveira, M., Chaves, S., Athayde, L., Carvalho, M., & Beck,


Fatima, H., & Robin, B. (2009). Colorectal Cancer Epidemiology: Incidence, Mortality,


Gref, R., Lück, M., Quellec, P., Marchand, M., Dellacherie, E., Harnisch, S., & Müller, R. H. (2000). “Stealth” corona-core nanoparticles surface modified by polyethylene glycol (PEG): Influences of the corona (PEG chain length and surface density) and of the core composition on phagocytic uptake and plasma


Ha, T., Le, H., Hoang, N., Huong Le, T., Duong, Q., Ha Tran, H., & Nguyen, P. (2012). Preparation and anti-cancer activity of polymer-encapsulated curcumin


Ramaswamy, S., Tamayo, P., Rifkin, R., Mukherjee, S., Yeang, H., Angelo, M., &


https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bcp.2008.07.031


Rubbia-Brandt, L., Audard, V., Sartoretti, P., Roth, a. D., Brezault, C., Le Charpentier,


Zhang, K., Na, T., Wang, L., Gao, Q., Yin, W., Wang, J., & Yuan, Z. (2014). Human diploid MRC-5 cells exhibit several critical properties of human umbilical cord-
derived mesenchymal stem cells. *Vaccine*, 32(50), 6820–6827. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.vaccine.2014.07.071


Zhu, J., Liu, M., Yang, H., & Shen, D. (2014). Effect of the stirring rate on physical and electrochemical properties of LiMnPO4 nanoplates prepared in a polyol